



**BEST AVAILABLE COPY**

Docket No.: MXI-211  
(PATENT)

**IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

In re Patent Application of:  
Debra Hudson *et al.*

Application No.: 10/073644

Confirmation No.: 6293

Filed: February 11, 2002

Art Unit: 1644

For: HUMAN MONOCLONAL ANTIBODIES TO  
FC ALPHA RECEPTOR (CD89)

Examiner: M. A. Belyavskiy

**DECLARATION BY DR. NILS LONBERG UNDER 37 C.F.R. §1.132**

MS AF  
Commissioner for Patents  
P.O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Dear Sir:

I, Dr. Nils Lonberg, declare the following:

1. I, Dr. Nils Lonberg, am presently the Senior Vice President and Scientific Director at Medarex, Inc. in Milpitas, California, the assignee of the above-referenced patent application. I received a Ph.D. in Biochemistry and Molecular Biology from Harvard University and completed a Post-Doctoral Fellowship at Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center in New York, New York. My *curriculum vitae* is attached herewith as Appendix A.
2. I have reviewed claims 64-66 of the above-referenced application which are drawn to an isolated human monoclonal anti-human CD89 antibody, or antigen binding portion thereof, comprising a heavy chain variable region derived from a human germline V<sub>H</sub> 3-30.3 gene and a light chain variable region derived from either a human germline V<sub>K</sub> L18 gene or V<sub>K</sub> A27 gene.
3. I understand that claims 64-66 of the above-referenced application have been rejected as being indefinite. Specifically, the Examiner asserts that claims 64-66 are indefinite based on reference to the V<sub>H</sub> 3-30.3, V<sub>K</sub> L18, and V<sub>K</sub> A27 germline genes "because the characteristics of these genes are not known."
4. It is my opinion that, prior to the filing date of the present application, the meaning of the above-mentioned human germline genes would have been clear and definite to one of ordinary skill in the art, including the specific characteristics (*e.g.*, sequences) of these genes. In particular, as evidenced by the enclosed references (discussed in detail below), not only was the

nomenclature of these genes well established, accepted and known in the art by the filing date of the application, but also they had been mapped and sequenced in their entirety. In addition, as also evidenced by the enclosed references, each of these V<sub>H</sub> 3-30.3, V<sub>K</sub> L18, and V<sub>K</sub> A27 designations corresponds to a single gene (*i.e.*, a single allele), the full-length sequence of which was known and publicly available at the filing date of the present application. As such, use of these gene designations in the claims of the present application would have been clear and definite to one of ordinary skill in the art.

5. With respect to the human light chain germline genes, V<sub>K</sub> L18 and V<sub>K</sub> A27, I refer to the following scientific review entitled "Immunoglobulin Genes," Second Ed., (1995) edited by T. Honjo and F.W. Alt, Academic Press, which summarizes the knowledge in the art as of 1995 with respect to the organization, structure and nomenclature of the light chain immunoglobulin genes. In particular, chapter 8, entitled "The human immunoglobulin  $\kappa$  genes" by Hans Zachau, discusses the human kappa locus (see pages 173-191; attached herewith as Appendix B). As described in Appendix B, the human V<sub>K</sub> genes were first isolated and sequenced as early as 1980. An outline of the human kappa locus is provided in Figure 2 (page 175) and shows that the  $\kappa$  proteins have been classified into four subgroups, I-IV with the V<sub>K</sub> L18 gene and V<sub>K</sub> A27 genes classified in subgroups I and III, respectively. Moreover, as also shown in Figure 2, these genes correspond to a single allele. Moreover, the complete sequences for these genes had been published, for example, by Schable and Zachau (1993) *Biol. Chem.* 374:1001-1022 (attached herewith as Appendix C; see page 1020 providing the amino acid sequences of V<sub>K</sub> L18 and V<sub>K</sub> A27).

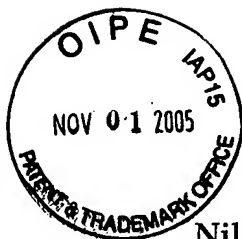
6. With respect to the human heavy chain germline gene V<sub>H</sub> 3-30.3, I refer again to the Honjo review. In particular, chapter 7, entitled "Immunoglobulin heavy chain loci of mouse and human" by Tasuku Honjo and Fumihiko Matsuda, discusses the nomenclature of the human V<sub>H</sub> locus (see pages 145-171; attached herewith as Appendix D). The human V<sub>H</sub> regions have been divided into three subgroups based on amino acid sequence homology. These three subgroups have further been divided into six V<sub>H</sub> families (see Figure 1, page 147). Subgroup III contains the largest number of members, yet constitutes a single family, V<sub>H</sub>3. Based on the established nomenclature, each V<sub>H</sub> segment is named according to its family number and the order from the 3' end of the V<sub>H</sub> locus. An insertional polymorphic V<sub>H</sub> segment is indicated by a number with a decimal point (see, page 149, lines 22-27). Accordingly, the V<sub>H</sub> 3-30.3 gene refers to a specific polymorphic variant of the V<sub>H</sub> 3 family member which is the thirtieth gene from the D region. In addition, the complete amino acid sequence of allele 3 of V<sub>H</sub> 3-30, *i.e.*, V<sub>H</sub> 3-30.3, had been determined and published prior to the filing date of the present application by, for example, Chang and Siegel (1998) *Am. Soc. Hematol.* 21(8)3066-3078 (attached herewith as Appendix E; see Figure 2(a)).

7. In conclusion, as shown by the foregoing pre-filing publications, the light and heavy chain immunoglobulin germline gene nomenclature recited in the claims of the present application was well known and accepted in the art prior to the filing date of the present application. Moreover, these gene designations (V<sub>H</sub> 3-30.3, V<sub>K</sub> L18, and V<sub>K</sub> A27) were known to correspond to a single gene sequence (*i.e.*, a single allele) which was also publicly available prior to the filing date of the application. Accordingly, reference to these gene designations in the present claims would have been clear and definite to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time of filing.

9. I have been warned that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under §1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code, and that such willful and false statements may jeopardize the validity of the subject application or any patent resulting therefrom, and declare that all statements made of our own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true.

By:   
Nils Lonberg, Ph.D.

Date: 10-13-05



## Curriculum Vitae

Name: Nils Lonberg

Born: 2-23-56, Berkeley, CA

Social Security #: 227-92-3993

Home Address: 168 Bardet Rd  
Woodside, CA 94062

Work Address: Medarex  
521 Cottonwood Drive  
Milpitas, CA 95035

Telephone: home: (650) 851-1442  
work: (408) 545-2721

Internet E-mail: nlonberg@medarex.com

## Education:

<i>Undergraduate:</i>	1974-1977	Reed College
	1977-1978	University of Oregon
	1978-1979	Reed College
<i>Graduate:</i>	1979-1985	Harvard University, Ph.D., March 1985
<i>Postdoctoral:</i>	1985-1989	Sloan-Kettering Institute for Cancer Research

<b>Employment:</b>	1990-1994	Senior Scientist GenPharm International, Mountain View, CA.
	1994-1997	Director, Molecular Biology GenPharm International, Palo Alto, CA.
	1998-2000	Vice President, Scientific Director GenPharm International, San Jose, CA.
	2000-present	Senior Vice President, Scientific Director Medarex, Milpitas, CA.



## Selected Bibliography:

1. S.C. Kowalczykowski, N. LONBERG, J.W. Newport, and P.H. von Hippel (1981) Interactions of bacteriophage T4-coded gene 32 protein with nucleic acids, I. Characterization of the binding interactions. *J. Mol. Biol.* **145**, 75-104.
2. J.W. Newport, N. LONBERG, S.C. Kowalczykowski, and P.H. von Hippel (1981) Interactions of bacteriophage T4-coded gene 32 protein with nucleic acids, II. Specificity of binding to DNA and RNA. *J. Mol. Biol.* **145**, 105-121.
3. N. LONBERG, S.C. Kowalczykowski, L.S. Paul, and P.H. von Hippel (1981) Interactions of bacteriophage T4-coded gene 32 protein with nucleic acids, III. Binding properties of two specific proteolytic digestion products of the protein (G32P\*I and G32P\*III). *J. Mol. Biol.* **145**, 123-138.
4. P.H. von Hippel, S.C. Kowalczykowski, N. LONBERG, J.W. Newport, L.S. Paul, G.D. Stormo, and L. Gold. (1982) Autoregulation of gene expression, quantitative evaluation of the expression and function of the bacteriophage T4 gene 32 (single-stranded DNA binding protein) protein system. *J. Mol. Biol.* **162**, 795-818.
5. N. LONBERG and W. Gilbert (1983) Primary structure of chicken muscle pyruvate kinase mRNA. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **80**, 3661-3665.
6. N. LONBERG and W. Gilbert (1985) Intron/exon structure of the chicken pyruvate kinase gene. *Cell* **40**, 81-90.
7. S.C. Kowalczykowski, L.S. Paul, N. LONBERG, J.W. Newport, J.A. McSwiggen and P.H. von Hippel (1986) The cooperative and noncooperative binding of protein ligands to nucleic acid lattices: Experimental approaches to the determination of thermodynamic parameters. *Biochemistry* **25**, 1226-1240.
8. N. LONBERG, S.N. Gettner, E. Lacy, and D.R. Littman (1988) Mouse brain CD4 transcripts encode only the COOH-terminal half of the protein. *Mol. Cell. Biol.* **8**, 2224-2228.
9. A.M. Norment, N. LONBERG, E. Lacy, and D.R. Littman (1989) Alternatively spliced mRNA encodes a secreted form of human CD8 $\alpha$ : Characterization of the human CD8 $\alpha$  gene. *J. Immunol.* **142**, 3312-3319.
10. H. Clevers, N. LONBERG, S. Dunlap, E. Lacy, and C. Terhorst (1989) An enhancer located in a CpG-island 3' of the TCR/CD3- $\epsilon$  gene confers T lymphocyte-specificity to its promoter. *EMBO J.* **8**, 2527-2535.
11. H. Meade, L. Gates, E. Lacy, and N. LONBERG (1990) Bovine  $\alpha$ -S<sub>1</sub>-casein gene sequences direct high level expression of active human urokinase in mouse milk. *Bio/Technology*. **8**, 443-446.
12. R.S. Blumberg, S. Ley, J. Sancho, N. LONBERG, E. Lacy, F. McDermott, V. Schad, J.L. Greenstein, and C. Terhorst (1990) Structure of the T cell antigen receptor: Evidence for two CD3- $\epsilon$  subunits in the T cell receptor/CD3 complex. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*. **87**, 7220-7224.
13. L.D. Taylor, C.E. Carmack, S.R. Schramm, R. Mashayekh, K.M. Higgins, C.-C. Kuo, C. Woodhouse, R.M. Kay, and N. LONBERG (1992) A transgenic mouse that expresses a diversity of human sequence heavy and light chain immunoglobulins. *Nucleic Acids Res.* **20**, 6287-6295.
14. N. Tuailon, L.D. Taylor, N. LONBERG, P.W. Tucker, and J.D. Capra (1993) Human immunoglobulin heavy-chain minilocus recombination in transgenic mice: Gene-segment use in  $\mu$  and  $\gamma$  transcripts. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*. **90**, 3720-3724.

15. L.D. Taylor, C.E. Carmack, D. Huszar, K.M. Higgins, R. Mashayekh, G. Sequar, S.R. Schramm, C.-C. Kuo, S.L. O'Donnell, R.M. Kay, C.S. Woodhouse, and N. LONBERG (1994) Human immunoglobulin transgenes undergo rearrangement, somatic mutation, and class switching in mice that lack endogenous IgM. *Int. Immunol.* 6, 579-591.
16. N. LONBERG, L.D. Taylor, F.A. Harding, M. Trounstein, K.M. Higgins, S.R. Schramm, C.-C. Kuo, R. Mashayekh, K. Wymore, J.G. McCabe, D. Munoz-O'Regan, S. L. O'Donnell, E.S.G. Lapachet, T. Bengoechea, D.M. Fishwild, C.E. Carmack, R.M. Kay, and D. Huszar (1994) Antigen-specific human antibodies from mice comprising four distinct genetic modifications. *Nature*, 368, 856-859.
17. N. LONBERG (1994) Transgenic approaches to human monoclonal antibodies. in *Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology*, Vol. 113, The Pharmacology of Monoclonal Antibodies, Eds. M. Rosenberg, G. Moore (Springer-Verlag, New York), pp. 49-101.
18. N. Tuaillon, A.B. Miller, N. LONBERG, P.W. Tucker, and J.D. Capra (1994) Biased utilization of DHQ52 and JH4 gene segments in a human Ig transgenic minilocus is independent of antigenic selection. *J. Immunol.* 152, 2912-2920.
19. B. Wang, C. Biron, J. She, K. Higgins, M.-J. Sunshine, E. Lacy, N. LONBERG, and C. Terhorst (1994) A block in early T lymphocyte and natural killer cell development in transgenic mice with high-copy numbers of the human CD3 $\epsilon$  gene. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 91, 9402-9406.
20. N. LONBERG and D. Huszar (1995) Human antibodies from transgenic mice. *Int. Rev. Immunol.* 13, 65-93.
21. F.A. Harding and N. LONBERG (1995) Class switching in human immunoglobulin transgenic mice. *Ann. New York Acad Sci.* 764, 536-546.
22. B. Wang, C. Levelt, M. Salio, D. Zheng, J. Sancho, C.-P. Liu, J. She, M. Huang, K. Higgins, M.-J. Sunshine, K. Eichmann, E. Lacy, N. LONBERG, and C. Terhorst (1995) Over-expression of CD3 $\epsilon$  transgenes blocks T lymphocyte development. *Int. Immunol.* 7, 435-448.
23. D.M. Fishwild, S.L. O'Donnell, T. Bengoechea, D.V. Hudson, F. Harding, S.L. Bernhard, D. Jones, R.M. Kay, K.M. Higgins, S.R. Schramm and N. LONBERG (1996) High avidity human IgG $\kappa$  monoclonal antibodies from a novel strain of minilocus transgenic mice. *Nature Biotechnology* 14, 845-851.
24. X. Wang, E.A. Bornslaeger, O. Haub, C. Tomihara-Newberger, N. LONBERG, M.B. Dinulos, C.M. Disteché, N. Copeland, D.J. Gilbert, N.A. Jenkins, and E. Lacy (1996) A candidate gene for the *amniotless* gastrulation stage mouse mutation encodes a TRAF related protein. *Dev. Biol.* 177, 274-290.
25. B. Wang, J. She, M. Salio, D. Allen, E. Lacy, N. LONBERG, C. Terhorst (1997) CD3- $\epsilon$  overexpressed in prothymocytes acts as an oncogene. *Molecular Medicine*, 3, 72-81.
26. M.E. Donohoe, G.B. Beck-Engeser, N. LONBERG, H. Karasuyama, R.L. Riley, H.M. Jack, B.B. Blomberg (2000) Transgenic human lambda 5 rescues the murine lambda 5 nullizygous phenotype. *J. Immunol.* 10, 5269-76.
27. I. Ishida, K. Tomizuka, H. Yoshida, T. Tahara, N. Takahashi, A. Ohguma, S. Tanaka, M. Umehashi, H. Maeda, C. Nozaki, E. Halk, N. LONBERG (2002) Production of human monoclonal and polyclonal antibodies in TransChromo animals. *Cloning Stem Cells.* 4, 91-102.
28. T. Keler, E. Halk, L. Vitale, T. O'Neill, D. Blanset, S. Lee, M. Srinivasan, R.F. Graziano, T. Davis, N. LONBERG, A. Korman (2003) Activity and safety of CTLA-4 blockade combined with vaccines in cynomolgus macaques. *J Immunol.* 171, 6251-9.

29. N. LONBERG (2005) Human antibodies from transgenic animals. *Nat Biotechnol.* 23, 1117-25.

#### Awards and Grants:

National Science Foundation Predoctoral Fellowship,	1979-1982.
American Cancer Society Postdoctoral Fellowship,	1985-1988.
National Institutes of Health Postdoctoral Fellowship,	1988-1989.
National Institutes of Health SBIR Grant (phases I & II),	1991-1994.

#### Patents:

H.Meade and N. LONBERG (1989) Isolation of Exogenous Recombinant Proteins from the Milk of Transgenic Mammals. *U.S. Patent #4,873,316.*

N. LONBERG and R. Kay (1996) Transgenic Non-Human Animals Capable of Producing Heterologous Antibodies. *U.S. Patent #5,545,806.*

N. LONBERG and R. Kay (1996) Transgenic Non-Human Animals Capable of Producing Heterologous Antibodies of Various Isotypes. *U.S. Patent #5,569,825.*

N. LONBERG and R. Kay (1997) Transgenic Non-Human Animals Capable of Producing Heterologous Antibodies. *U.S. Patent #5,625,126.*

N. LONBERG and R. Kay (1997) Transgenic Non-Human Animals Capable of Producing Heterologous Antibodies. *U.S. Patent #5,633,425.*

N. LONBERG and R. Kay (1997) Transgenic Non-Human Animals Capable of Producing Heterologous Antibodies of Various Isotypes. *U.S. Patent #5,661,016.*

N. LONBERG and R. Kay (1997) Transgenic Non-Human Animals Capable of Producing Heterologous Antibodies. *European. Patent #0 814 159 A2*

H.Meade and N. LONBERG (1998) Transgenic Non-Human Mammal Milk. *U.S. Patent #5,750,172.*

N. LONBERG and R. Kay (1998) Transgenic Non-Human Animals Capable of Producing Heterologous Antibodies. *U.S. Patent #5,770,429.*

N. LONBERG and R. Kay (1998) Transgenic Non-Human Animals Capable of Producing Heterologous Antibodies. *U.S. Patent #5,789,650.*

N. LONBERG and R. Kay (1998) Transgenic Non-Human Animals Capable of Producing Heterologous Antibodies. *U.S. Patent #5,814,318.*

N. LONBERG and R. Kay (1999) Transgenic Non-Human Animals Capable of Producing Heterologous Antibodies. *U.S. Patent #5,874,299.*

**N. LONBERG and R. Kay** (1999) Transgenic Non-Human Animals Capable of Producing Heterologous Antibodies of Various Isotypes. *U.S. Patent #5,877,397*.

**N. LONBERG and R. Kay** (1999) Transgenic Non-Human Animals Capable of Producing Heterologous Antibodies. *Japanese. Patent #2938569*.

**N. LONBERG and R. Kay** (2001) High Affinity Human Antibodies and Human Antibodies Against Digoxin. *U.S. Patent #6,255,458*.

**N. LONBERG and R. Kay** (2001) Transgenic Non-Human Animals for Producing Heterologous Antibodies. *U.S. Patent #6,300,129*.

**J. Buechler, G. Valkirs, J. Gray, and N. LONBERG** (2004) Human Antibodies as Diagnostic Reagents. *U.S. Patent #6,680,209*.

**J. Buechler, G. Valkirs, J. Gray, and N. LONBERG** (2004) Human Antibodies. *U.S. Patent #6,794,132*.

*Dedicated to the memory of Georges Kohler*

**Immunoglobulin Genes  
Second edition**

Edited by

**T. Honjo**

*Kyoto University, Japan*

**F. W. Alt**

*Howard Hughes Medical Institute Research Laboratories,  
The Children's Hospital, Boston*



**ACADEMIC PRESS**

*Harcourt Brace & Company, Publishers*  
London, San Diego, New York, Boston, Sydney, Tokyo, Toronto

ACADEMIC PRESS LIMITED

24-28 Oval Road  
LONDON NW1 7DX, UK

*U. S. Edition Published by*  
ACADEMIC PRESS INC.  
San Diego, CA 92101, USA

This book is printed on acid-free paper

Copyright © 1995 ACADEMIC PRESS LIMITED

*All rights reserved*

B lymphocyte tolerance in the mouse, pages 365-378, and Immunoglobulin variable region gene segments in human autoantibodies, pages 379-396, are US government works in the public domain and not subject to copyright.

No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical including photocopying, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system without permission in writing from the publisher

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

ISBN 0 12 053640 4

## Contents

*Contributors*

*Foreword*

*Preface to first edition*

*Preface to second edition*

vii  
xi  
xv  
xvii

### PART I: B CELLS

- 1 B-cell differentiation in humans  
P D Burrows, H W Schroeder Jr and M D Cooper 3
- 2 The role of B cell and pre-B-cell receptors in development and growth control of the B-lymphocyte cell lineage  
F Melchers 33
- 3 The maturation of the antibody response  
C Milstein and C Rada 57
- 4 Development of B-cell subsets  
S M Wells, A M Stall, A B Kantor and L A Herzenberg 83
- 5 Regulation of B-cell differentiation by stromal cells  
E A Faust, D C Saffran and O N Witte 103
- 6 Antigen receptors on B lymphocytes  
M Reth 129

### PART II: ORGANIZATION AND REARRANGEMENT OF IMMUNOGLOBULIN GENES

- 7 Immunoglobulin heavy chain loci of mouse and human  
T Honjo and F Matsuda 145
- 8 The human immunoglobulin  $\kappa$  genes  
H G Zachau 173
- 9 Immunoglobulin  $\lambda$  genes  
E Selsing and L E Daitch 193

10	The variable region gene assembly mechanism A Okada and F W Alt	205
11	Regulation of class switch recombination of the immunoglobulin heavy chain genes J Zhang, F Alt and T Honjo	235
12	Generation of diversity by post-rearrangement diversification mechanisms: the chicken and the sheep antibody repertoires J-C Weill and C-A Reynaud	267
13	Immunoglobulin heavy chain genes of rabbit K L Knight and C Tunyaplin	289
14	The structure and organization of immunoglobulin genes in lower vertebrates J P Rast, M K Anderson and G W Litman	315
<b>PART III: IMMUNOGLOBULIN GENE EXPRESSION</b>		
15	Ig gene expression and regulation in Ig transgenic mice U Storb	345
16	B-lymphocyte tolerance in the mouse D Nemažee	365
17	Immunoglobulin variable region gene segments in human autoantibodies K N Potter and J D Capra	379
18	Regulation of immunoglobulin gene transcription K Calame and S Ghosh	397
	Index	423

## Contributors

### **FW Alt**

Howard Hughes Medical Institute Research Laboratories, The Children's Hospital, 300 Longwood Avenue, Boston, MA 02115, USA

### **MK Anderson**

Department of Molecular Genetics, All Children's Hospital, 801 Sixth St South, St Petersburg, FL 33701-4899, USA

### **PD Burrows**

Division of Developmental and Clinical Immunology, Departments of Microbiology, Medicine and Pediatrics, University of Alabama at Birmingham, Wallace Tumor Institute, UAB Station, Birmingham, AL, USA

### **K Calame**

Columbia University College of Physicians and Surgeons, Department of Microbiology, 701 West 168th Street, New York, NY 10032-2704, USA

### **JD Capra**

Southwestern Medical School, Department of Microbiology, 5323 Hines Boulevard, Dallas, TX 75235, USA

### **MD Cooper**

Howard Hughes Medical Institute, Department of Pediatrics Microbiology, University of Alabama at Birmingham, 263 Wallace Tumor Institute, UAB Station, Birmingham, AL 35294, USA

### **LE Daltch**

Tufts University School of Medicine, Department of Pathology, 136 Harr Avenue, Boston, MA 02111, USA

### **EA Faust**

Howard Hughes Medical Institute Research Laboratories, University of California, Los Angeles, 5-748 MacDonald Building, 10833 Le Conte Avenue, Los Angeles, CA 90024-1662, USA

### **S Ghosh**

Howard Hughes Medical Institute, Yale University, 295 Congress Ave 154 BCM, New Haven, CT 06510, USA

### **LA Herzenberg**

Stanford University School of Medicine, Department of Genetics, Immunogenetics and Cell Sorting Laboratory, Stanford, CA 94305-1662, USA

## The human immunoglobulin $\kappa$ genes

Hans G. Zachau

*Institut für Physiologische Chemie der Universität München, München,  
Germany*

The elucidation of the human $\kappa$ locus .....	173
The $V_{\kappa}$ genes of the locus .....	175
The B3-J-C $_{\kappa}$ -xde region .....	178
The structural organization of the $\kappa$ locus in germline DNA .....	179
Polymorphisms in the $\kappa$ locus .....	180
Rearranged $V_{\kappa}$ genes .....	181
Dispersed $V_{\kappa}$ genes .....	184
Repetitive and unique sequences in the $\kappa$ locus .....	185
Evolution of the $V_{\kappa}$ genes .....	186
Biomedical implications .....	187
Miscellaneous and concluding remarks .....	187

While the chapter on the immunoglobulin  $\kappa$  genes in the first edition of this book covered the information available in 1987 on the genes of human and mouse (Zachau, 1989a), the present review deals with the human  $\kappa$  genes only and concentrates on the more recent results. In fact, quotations to the older literature will not be repeated here. For the mouse  $V_{\kappa}$  gene families, their complexity, polymorphism and use in non-autoimmune responses the reader is referred to a recent review by Kofler *et al.* (1992). Other aspects are dealt with in the respective chapters of this book.

### THE ELUCIDATION OF THE HUMAN $\kappa$ LOCUS

The single human C $_{\kappa}$  gene and the five J $_{\kappa}$  genes were cloned and characterized by P. Leder's group (Hiebler *et al.*, 1980, 1982) and the first human  $V_{\kappa}$  genes were isolated

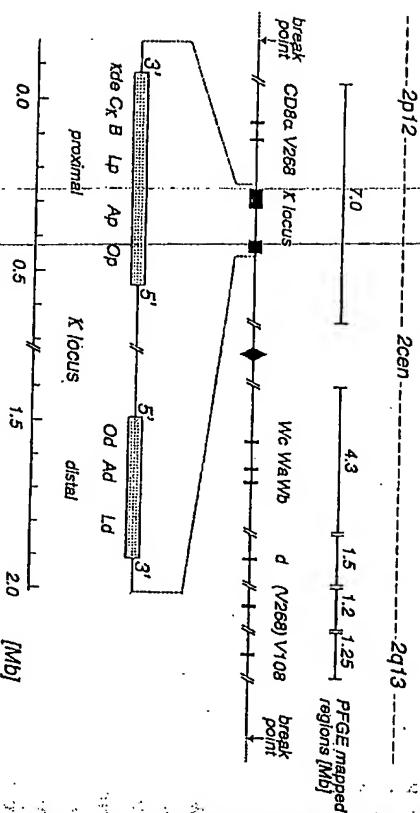
IMMUNOGLOBULIN GENES (2ND EDITION)  
ISBN 0-12-053640-4

Copyright © 1993 Academic Press Limited  
All rights of reproduction in any form reserved



and sequenced by Bentley and Rabbitts (1980, 1981, 1983). In our group, the κ genes have been studied since the early 1980s, and some aspects of the work were reviewed in lecture reports (Zachau, 1990, 1993), and in a recent survey (Zachau, 1995).

The structural work in our laboratory was based on 440 cosmid and 30 phage λ clones that were isolated from various libraries of germline DNA and mapped with 5–12 different restriction nucleases each. Initially, the search clones were V<sub>κ</sub> gene probes and specific chromosomal walking probes at later stages of the work. The first indications that there may be two copies of the κ locus came from an apparently duplication of Pech *et al.* (1985). The extent of the duplication became known with some certainty only at a late state of the work. It is now clear that the so-called C<sub>κ</sub> proximal (p) copy of the locus contains in a 600-kb contig, in addition to the J<sub>κ</sub>-C<sub>κ</sub> region, 40 V<sub>κ</sub> genes and pseudogenes, and the distal (d) copy contains in a 440-kb contig 36 V<sub>κ</sub> genes and pseudogenes. A scheme of the κ locus and its surroundings is presented for general orientation (Fig. 1). The two large contigs were assembled from smaller ones that had been studied separately before: Op/Od (Pargent *et al.*, 1991a), Ap/Ad (Lautner-Rieske *et al.*, 1992), Lp/Ld (Huber *et al.*, 1993a,b), B (Lorenz *et al.*, 1988), and J<sub>κ</sub>-C<sub>κ</sub>-xde (Klobeck and Zachau, 1986; Klobeck *et al.*, 1987a). An *Sna*BI map of the contigs was reported by Eismert (1994). The cloning of the gaps between these original



**Fig. 1.** Schematic representation of the central part of chromosome 2. The cloned regions of the κ locus are shown as black bars or stippled boxes. Vertical lines indicate cloned orthon regions (V268, Wa-Wc, V108; see p. 185) and fragments hybridizing to the following probes: CD8α and 273-2, derived from the V268 region and therefore designated (V268) (Weichold *et al.*, 1993b; Huber *et al.*, 1994); d, is depicted according to Weichold *et al.* (1993a). The organization of the κ locus orphans on the long arm and the breakpoints of pericentric inversion(s) are described by Lautner-Rieske *et al.* (1993).

small contigs by chromosomal walking was a lengthy and cumbersome process, since the clones required for linking were highly underrepresented in the libraries. Structural reasons for this did not become apparent when the linking was achieved.

## THE V<sub>κ</sub> GENES OF THE LOCUS

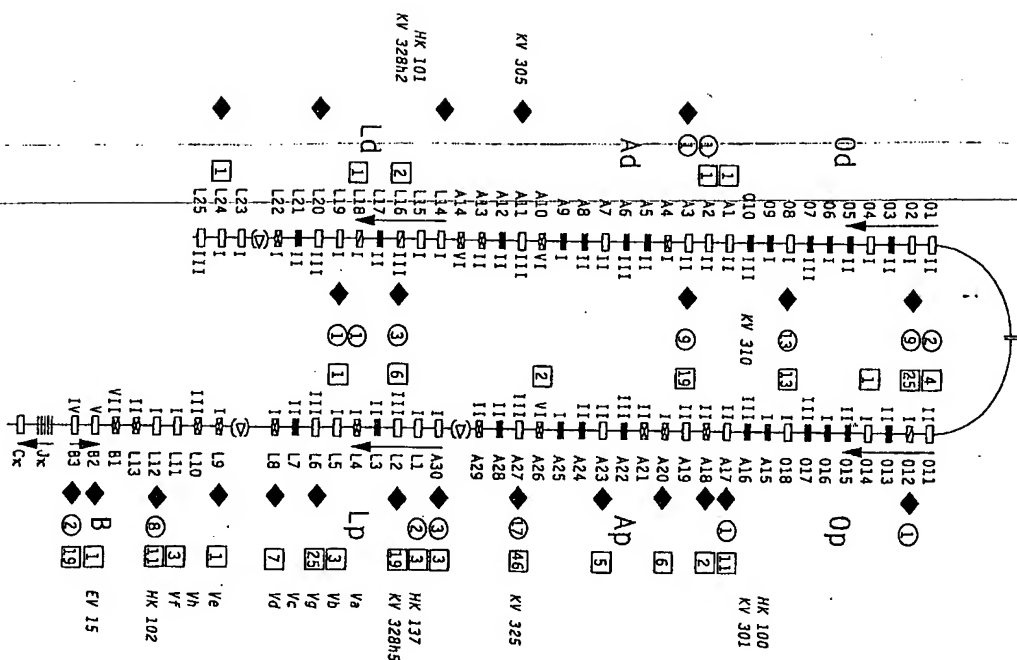
### Genes and pseudogenes, subgroups, polymerase chain reaction (PCR) primers

The 76 V<sub>κ</sub> genes and pseudogenes of the locus were sequenced and their transcriptional polarities were determined within the maps. An outline of the V<sub>κ</sub> genes of the locus is given in Fig. 2. There are 10 solitary genes and 33 gene pairs whose sequences are 95–100% identical in the coding regions. Of the V<sub>κ</sub> genes 32 are potentially functional, 16 have minor defects and 25 are pseudogenes; three genes were found to occur both as potentially functional and slightly defective alleles. The minor defects are defined as one or two 1-bp alterations in a gene, for instance the occurrence of a stop codon and/or a deviation from the canonical sequences of regulatory elements, splice sites or hepta- and nona-nucleotide recognition sequences. The 16 genes with minor defects are defined as a separate class of genes, since, as for the three genes mentioned above, potentially functional alleles may exist in the human population. This is not to be expected for the pseudogenes, which usually carry several defects each. All human V<sub>κ</sub> gene, pseudogene and orthon sequences including all alleles known to us were compiled (Schäble and Zachau, 1993) and, in addition, some of the pseudogenes were dealt with specifically by Schäble *et al.* (1994). Recently, Cox *et al.* (1994) amplified from genomic DNA by PCR FR1-CDR3 sequences and called four of them 'new gene segments'. However, the sequences do not correspond to new gene loci but have to be considered alleles of published V<sub>κ</sub> genes and orphans, as far as this can be concluded in the absence of intron sequences and data on the genomic context (Klein and Zachau, 1995). The systematic nomenclature of V<sub>κ</sub> genes (Fig. 2) is used throughout this chapter and in all recent reports from our laboratory, but it is expected that some alternative designations will be further employed in the literature. The different designations of the various genes were compiled by Schäble and Zachau (1993).

There is good circumstantial evidence that we have now cloned all or most V<sub>κ</sub> genes of the locus. The reservations inevitably connected with such a statement have been discussed by Meindl *et al.* (1990a), Huber *et al.* (1993a,b) and Klein *et al.* (1993). One prerequisite was, of course, that we were able to close all gaps within the p and the d copies of the locus and to extend the two contigs in both directions by 50–80 kb without finding additional genes, an effort that is at present being continued with YAC clones (I. Zocher and J. Brensing-Küppers, unpublished data). Recently, one still Unidentified Hybridizing Object (UHO) was detected in one of the YAC clones (J. Brensing-Küppers, unpublished). However,

previously identified UHOs were either orphans (p. 184) or turned out on sequencing not to contain V<sub>κ</sub> like structures but a LINE1 sequence and, in some cases, M13 vector sequences, the cross-hybridizations of which with human DNA are known (Vassart *et al.*, 1987); this can be taken as an indication that the search for additional V<sub>κ</sub> genes by hybridization was carried to the limit (Röschenthaler *et al.*, 1992; Schable *et al.*, 1994).

The classification of κ proteins into four subgroups (Kabat *et al.*, 1991 and earlier editions) was fully confirmed when the V<sub>κ</sub> gene sequences were aligned (Schable and Zachau, 1993). The similarity between potentially functional V<sub>κ</sub> gene segments is



supportive element in the dc region is CCCT (Högberg *et al.*, 1991). An AGCC element nearby was found to bind nuclear proteins (Mockait *et al.*, 1988). It is a matter of definition whether some of the elements, notably the dc element itself which is found in the opposite 5', 3' polarity upstream of  $V_H$  genes (Falkner and Zachau, 1984), serve a promoter or an enhancer function. The work on the upstream elements of  $\kappa$  genes was compiled by Mockait *et al.* (1989) and a comprehensive review of the regulatory elements in immunoglobulin genes was given by Staudt and Lenardo (1991).

Another outcome of the  $V_L$  alignments (Schäble and Zachau, 1993) is that within the major subgroups the leader segments are more similar to each other than the  $V$  gene segments. Some conserved regions in the introns are related to functions in the splice process. The intron sizes are remarkably similar within subgroups and show pronounced differences between subgroups. Deviations from the recombination signal sequences are compiled in Schäble *et al.* (1994).

## THE B3-J<sub>κ</sub>-C<sub>κ</sub>-kde REGION

The 23-kb region between the single  $V_L$ IV gene of the locus, which is called B3, and J<sub>κ</sub>1 was found to be free of  $V_L$  gene-like structures in the DNAs of several individuals. However, a sequence of about 0.5 kb was found in the middle of the region that has a counterpart called homox on another chromosome but otherwise does not hybridize to genomic DNA (Klobeck *et al.*, 1989). No function is known for the two sequences, which are 96% identical. The finding of spliced J<sub>κ</sub>-C<sub>κ</sub> transcripts without a  $V_L$  gene (Martin *et al.*, 1991) points to the existence of a promoter and a transcription start site about 4 kb upstream of J<sub>κ</sub>1, which may function in a prelude to  $V_L$ -J<sub>κ</sub> rearrangements.

Although the sequences of the J<sub>κ</sub> and C<sub>κ</sub> genes have been known for a long time (Hieter *et al.*, 1980, 1982), the sequence of the whole J<sub>κ</sub>-C<sub>κ</sub> region of more than 5 kb has been made available only recently (Whitehurst *et al.*, 1992). This was done in the context of further defining the location of the matrix association region (MAR) in the J<sub>κ</sub>-C<sub>κ</sub> intron. Slightly upstream of MAR lies the kde target sequence (see below) and slightly downstream the intron enhancer, which was characterized by Gimble and Max (1987). The various enhancing and silencing sequence motifs were reviewed by Staudt and Lenardo (1991). An additional silencing element immediately upstream of the NF- $\kappa$ B binding site of the intron was recently described for the mouse and human systems (Saksela and Baltimore, 1993).

The C<sub>κ</sub> alleles, which were originally defined serologically and by protein sequencing, were now studied by PCR permitting easy detection of the association to other polymorphic markers of the region (Moxley and Gibbs, 1992). At a position 12 kb to the 3' side of C<sub>κ</sub> lies the so-called downstream enhancer, which was identified by sequence homology to the corresponding mouse enhancer (Müller *et al.*, 1990). Its functional characteristics were then defined by Jude and Max (1992).

Another 12 kb downstream lies the kde (C<sub>κ</sub> deleting) element, which was recognized in the human system by Simionovitch *et al.* (1985) and localized by Klobeck and Zachau (1986). Its hepta- and nona-nucleotide recognition signals (located at 23 bp distance) recombine with the complementary signal sequences in the intron (located at 29 bp distance) leading to the excision of C<sub>κ</sub> and the enhancers in some  $\lambda$  chain-producing B cells. Nothing is known yet about the enzymology and regulation of this process.

## THE STRUCTURAL ORGANIZATION OF THE $\kappa$ LOCUS IN GERMLINE DNA

The  $\kappa$  locus is located on the short arm of chromosome 2 at 2cen-p12 (Malcolm *et al.*, 1982; McBride *et al.*, 1982) or, more specifically, at 2cen-p11.2 (Laumet-Riecke *et al.*, 1993). Mapping by pulsed field gel electrophoresis (PFGE) with the help of 13 rare-cutter restriction nucleases and 15 unique hybridization probes led to a detailed picture of the locus and its surroundings (Weichhold *et al.*, 1993a). The p and d contigs are arranged in opposite 5', 3' polarity (Fig. 1). The still uncloned region of 800 kb between the contigs appears not to contain further  $V_L$  genes (see p. 175). The structure is largely symmetrical starting from a centre in the uncloned region and extending for about 850 kb to each side, i.e. to the duplicate gene pair L10/L25 as depicted in Fig. 2. The map of the  $\kappa$  locus, comprising about 2 Mb, extends for another 1.5 Mb towards the centromere, but no marker is known between the locus and the centromere. The map of 3.5 Mb towards the telomere includes the orphan  $V_L$  gene V268 (Huber *et al.*, 1994) and, at a distance of 2-2.2 Mb from C<sub>κ</sub>, the CD8 $\alpha$  locus (Weichhold *et al.*, 1993b). Some detours and artefacts in establishing the PFGE map were also described (Weichhold *et al.*, 1993c).

The 5' termini of the p and d contigs, i.e. the regions towards the uncloned central part beyond the genes O1 and O10 (Fig. 2), are rich in repetitive DNA sequences (Pargent *et al.*, 1991a). The same seems to be the case at the 3' end of the d contig beyond L25 (Huber *et al.*, 1993a). These sequences have possibly played a role in confining the  $\kappa$  locus to its present limits. The inverted duplicated structure of the  $\kappa$  locus may have been formed in reactions similar to those described in models of gene amplification (for a discussion see Weichhold *et al.*, 1993a).

Three regions in the cloned parts of the locus, i.e. between A29 and A30, L8 and L9, and L22 and L23 (Fig. 2), are not represented on the opposite copy. Since an artefactual loss of these regions on cloning can be excluded, they must have been deleted during evolution, albeit after the duplication of the locus. All deletion breakpoints were sequenced. The sequence motif CCAAG/CTGG, found by Chou and Morrison (1993) to occur commonly near (somatic) non-homologous recombination breakpoints involving immunoglobulin gene sequences, was observed rather frequently in our sequences, but no accumulation near the breakpoints was seen.

## POLYMORPHISMS IN THE $\kappa$ LOCUS

### Allelic differences and haplotypes

Although the  $V_{\kappa}$  gene probes of the major subgroups hybridize to many related genes and complicated patterns ensue, it has been possible to define some  $V_{\kappa}$  gene-related allelic polymorphisms (Turnbull *et al.*, 1987). One such polymorphism was linked to rheumatoid arthritis with a relative risk of 5 (Meindl *et al.*, 1990b). However, for systematic studies of polymorphisms single-copy probes are much preferred. The detection of allelic differences by restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) studies is relatively straightforward in the non-duplicated part of the locus, as in the B3 region (Klobeck *et al.*, 1987a), the B3-J $_{\kappa}$  intergenic region (Klobeck *et al.*, 1989) and in the C $_{\kappa}$  region (Field *et al.*, 1987; Klobeck *et al.*, 1987a; Moxley and Gibbs, 1992; and earlier literature on C $_{\kappa}$  allotypes). In the duplicated part of the locus most specific probes recognize the homologous parts of both copies. Although they are, therefore, not truly unique they are included for the present discussion in the group of single-copy probes. Five RFLPs were established in the duplicated O regions, which together with the three RFLPs of the B3-C $_{\kappa}$  region served to define three basic and several derived haplotypes of the  $\kappa$  locus (Pargent *et al.*, 1991b).

There is little allelic variation in the gene regions: no variants at all were found in the C $_{\kappa}$  genes of 50 unrelated individuals. 12 variants were identified in the B3 genes of 26 individuals, but all of them were located in the intron (Kurth and Cavalli-Sforza, 1994); the 1-bp difference between all their germline B3 gene sequences and the published sequence, which is pointed out by Kurth and Cavalli-Sforza (1994), results from aligning to the sequence of a rearranged and mutated B3 gene but not to the germline B3 gene sequence described in the same paper (Klobeck *et al.*, 1985). Schable and Zachau (1993) compiled 22 alleles of 19 other  $V_{\kappa}$  genes. Of 27 different  $V_{\kappa}$  gene sequences with open reading frames reported by Cox *et al.* (1994) 26 were found to be identical to previously published sequences (that had been determined in the DNA of various individuals) and one had a 1-bp difference; an allele of a pseudo-gene pair and sequences related to two orphans were also reported. This is our interpretation of the respective data as described in Klein and Zachau (1995). The implications of allelic variation for mutation studies in  $V_{\kappa}$  genes are discussed on p. 183.

### Duplication differentiating polymorphisms

If a hybridization probe recognizes homologous p- and d-copy derived fragments and the fragments are of different sizes, it defines a duplication differentiating polymorphism (DDP). With some DDP probes RFLPs were also detected but for the majority no allelic differences have been found as yet. The extent of duplication of the  $\kappa$  locus was determined with the help of 16 DDPs distributed over the entire locus (Pargent *et al.*, 1991b) and, of course, by the PFGE work (Lorenz *et al.*, 1987;

Weichhold *et al.*, 1993a). The DDPs were essential in the structural work on the  $\kappa$  locus, since every newly isolated phage or cosmid clone had to be assigned to the p or d copy.

### Haplotype 11

For most RFLPs and DDPs it is not known whether the underlying appearance or disappearance of a restriction site is caused by a base change, a deletion, insertion or by another structural change. One haplotype, however, is known to differ from the 'normal' haplotype N by the absence of the whole d copy of the locus. This so-called haplotype 11 was found in an individual homozygous for it (Straubinger *et al.*, 1988b). The haplotype was characterized by hybridization to DDP probes across the locus (Pargent *et al.*, 1991b). In a group of 23 caucasoid individuals there was, in addition to the homozygous one, one heterozygous individual. In a group including individuals of African and Asian origin 2 of 41 individuals were found to be heterozygous for haplotype 11 (Schable *et al.*, 1993). In PFGE experiments it was shown that about 1.0 Mb, including the whole d contig, is absent from the DNA of the homozygous individual, and indirect evidence indicates that this is due to a deletion rather than to the persistence of an evolutionarily early non-duplicated state (Weichhold *et al.*, 1993a).

### REARRANGED $V_{\kappa}$ GENES

Since this topic is also dealt with in other chapters of this book, only some aspects related to the structure of the human  $\kappa$  locus are covered here. The available data on the mechanism of V(D)J joining and on V-J, V-D and DJ junctions were comprehensively reviewed by Lewis (1994). Among the reviews on hypermutation the recent ones by Berek (1993) MacLennan (1994) and Hengstlager *et al.* (1995) should be mentioned.

### V $_{\kappa}$ -J $_{\kappa}$ rearrangements

The 5', 3'-polarity of the  $V_{\kappa}$  genes within the locus (arrows in Fig. 2) determines the type of rearrangement: the two J $_{\kappa}$ -proximal genes B2 and B3, whose polarity is opposite to that of the J $_{\kappa}$ -C $_{\kappa}$  segment, are rearranged by an inversion mechanism (Klobeck *et al.*, 1987a; Lorenz *et al.*, 1988), while the other  $V_{\kappa}$  genes of the p copy rearrange by deletion of the stretch of DNA between the V $_{\kappa}$  and J $_{\kappa}$  genes (Weichhold *et al.*, 1990). The genes of the d copy are located 1.35–1.8 Mb from J $_{\kappa}$ -C $_{\kappa}$  and the polarities of all of them are opposite to the polarity of J $_{\kappa}$ -C $_{\kappa}$ . For one of the d-copy genes the rearrangement by inversion was proven by PFGE experiments (Weichhold



*et al.*, 1990). Since for all p- and d-copy genes the polarities were determined by sequencing and detailed restriction mapping, their mode of rearrangement can be inferred from the cases that had been studied in detail.

The reciprocal products to the  $V_{\kappa}$ -J $_{\kappa}$  joints are the signal joints, in which the heparin and nona-nucleotide recombination sequences are linked back to back. The first signal joint was found in genomic DNA by Steimetz *et al.* (1980) and was interpreted by Lewis *et al.* (1982) as the product of an inversion. Several signal joints have been found in the human  $\kappa$  locus (reviewed in Zachau, 1989a and Klein *et al.*, 1993). When V and J gene segments are joined by the deletion mechanism, the excised material is lost from the cells or found as circular DNA. Such circles also carrying signal joints have been found in several systems including the mouse  $\kappa$  system (e.g. Hirama *et al.*, 1991) but, possibly for technical reasons, not yet for the human  $\kappa$  genes.

B cells can undergo consecutive  $V_{\kappa}$ -J $_{\kappa}$  rearrangements until all J $_{\kappa}$  elements have been used. Examples of an inversion followed by a deletion and of two subsequent inversions have been reported (e.g. Klobeck *et al.*, 1987a; Lorenz *et al.*, 1988). In one cell line all products of a deletional  $V_{\kappa}$ -J $_{\kappa}$  joining (in combination with a (2;8) translocation; Klobeck *et al.*, 1987b) and two consecutive inversions were cloned and sequenced. In the second rearrangement a productive  $V_{\kappa}$ -J $_{\kappa}$ -C $_{\kappa}$  joint was produced and, contrary to the common assumptions, this did not prevent a further recombination, which in this case was an aberrant one (Huber *et al.*, 1992).

Apparently, the recombination machinery can handle inversions of 25–42-kb fragments for the genes B3 and B2, and of megabase-sized, that is millimetre-long, fragments for the d-copy genes. An intermediate formation of looped chromatin threads would have to be assumed. Clearly any deletional  $V_{\kappa}$ -J $_{\kappa}$  joining leads to a loss of  $V_{\kappa}$  genes from the genome, while in an inversional joining all  $V_{\kappa}$  genes stay in the genome and can, in principle, be used in a second round of recombination. Also, genes other than  $V_{\kappa}$ , whose existence in the 800 kb between the p and d copies cannot be excluded (see below), would be kept in the genome on the (inversional) rearrangement of d-copy genes.

### Which $V_{\kappa}$ genes of the locus are rearranged, transcribed and translated?

This question was addressed by Klein *et al.* (1993) and Klein and Zachau (1995) on the basis of 70 of our own cDNA sequences and numerous nucleic acid and protein sequences from the literature. The results are shown in Fig. 2. It can be seen that some germline genes give rise to many transcripts and proteins and others to much fewer ones. For eight genes that, by definition (see p. 175), are potentially functional no transcripts or proteins were found. In general, fewer products were found to be derived from the d-copy than from the p-copy genes, although some cDNAs or proteins, whose sequences fit both duplicated germline genes (middle section in Fig. 2), may well be derived from d-copy genes. Figure 2 represents our current state of

knowledge. Other genomic  $V_{\kappa}$ -J $_{\kappa}$  joints and  $\kappa$  proteins may still be found, since the currently known ones are not the outcome of systematic searches. Transcription products (cDNAs), on the other hand, have been screened for in several laboratories. However, here also the absence of products for a potentially functional gene does not necessarily reflect its inability to be rearranged and transcribed, since the cDNA libraries are, of course, the outcome of immunological selection in the particular B cell repertoires under study; also in some cases an experimental bias in screening of the libraries cannot be excluded. At present, of the 76  $V_{\kappa}$  genes of the locus 22 genes and five pairs of duplicated identical genes are known to be transcribed. The corresponding numbers for rearranged genomic  $V_{\kappa}$  genes and for full-length  $\kappa$  proteins are 17 plus 4 and 7 plus 7.

### Somatic mutation

In considering the extent and type of somatic mutations, the definite assignment of the rearranged  $V_{\kappa}$  genes to certain germline genes is essential. The first mutated  $V_{\kappa}$  genes found (in the mouse system) could be defined, because the genomic surroundings of the rearranged and the unrearranged genes helped with the assignments (Pech *et al.*, 1981). The assignment of cDNAs to germline genes is more difficult. In the human system this became possible only after it could be reasonably assumed that all functional germline genes of the locus were known. Because of allelic variation, the sequence of the unrearranged germline gene of the same individual should be known from whom the mutated  $V_{\kappa}$ -J $_{\kappa}$  gene or cDNA is derived (see p. 180). This demand has to be taken seriously if one is interested in the mutation behaviour of specific single  $V_{\kappa}$  genes. It is less important if one considers the average extent and type of mutations of large numbers of rearranged genes or cDNAs.

There is a wide range of numbers of mutations per gene: for instance a cDNA with no mutation was isolated from the same library as other cDNAs with 25 mutations, which were derived from the same germline gene pair (Klein *et al.*, 1993). The survey of the cDNA sequences from our laboratory and the data from the literature gave information on the type of mutations and on various other features of the mutation process, but only one feature should be mentioned here — the fact that mutations in adjacent nucleotides are found about twice as often as expected statistically. On a nucleotide basis, 20–25% of the mutations are in such blocks. About half of our cDNA clones and about 40% of the human  $V_{\kappa}$  sequences from the literature carry block mutations. They may have arisen from independent mutations in adjacent nucleotides and/or from combined exchange processes. The occurrence of blocks of altered nucleotides may be a feature of the maturation of the immune response in human and mouse. Certainly, block mutations that lead to amino acid replacements would be subject to selection. Somatic gene conversion appears not to play a major role in introducing single or block mutations in the human  $\kappa$  system. The mechanistic features possibly involved in the hypermutation and block mutation processes of  $V_{\kappa}$  genes were discussed by Klein *et al.* (1993), Klein and Zachau (1995) and Zachau (1995).

Sequences within or downstream of the  $J_C-C_\kappa$  region are probably important for the hypermutation process since in an aberrantly rearranged  $\kappa$  gene, which is broken in  $V_\kappa$  by a (2;8) translocation, the mutations extend to the adjacent chromosome 8 sequences but are not found in the 5' part of the  $V_\kappa$  gene (Klobeck *et al.*, 1987b). A more detailed study in the mouse system was reported by Beitz *et al.* (1994). Somatic mutations in an aberrantly rearranged  $V_\kappa$  gene had been found previously (Pech *et al.*, 1981).

## $V_\kappa-J_\kappa$ junctions

There is an accumulation of base changes in the  $V_\kappa$  gene sequences close to the junction that is caused, at least in part, by the truncation and repair processes found in many V(D)J joining systems (review by Lewis, 1994). Therefore, the assignment of the V-gene moiety of the junction to a certain germline gene has to be based on a comparison of full-length sequences. In the survey of cDNA sequences from our laboratory and of data from the literature (Klein *et al.*, 1993; Klein and Zachau, 1995) about one-fifth of the  $V_\kappa-J_\kappa$  junctions contained additional nucleotides between  $V_\kappa$  and  $J_\kappa$ . These nucleotides code for amino acids 95A and 95B or, if their number is different from 3 or 6, destroy the reading frame. The additional nucleotides do not have the characteristics of P or palindromic elements (Lafaille *et al.*, 1989; Roth *et al.*, 1992). They may be derived from the germline nucleotides between the last canonical codon, i.e. codon 95, and the heptanucleotide on the one side and between the complementary heptanucleotide and the first  $J_\kappa$  codon on the other side. The sequences of the additional nucleotides fit those germline sequences in several cases either fully or with one base change, which would have to be attributed to somatic mutations. Although terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT) is generally not detected in B cells at the time the  $\kappa$  genes are rearranged, the presence of N segments (Alt and Baltimore, 1982) in these genes has been reported repeatedly (Klobeck *et al.*, 1987b; Martin *et al.*, 1991; H. Schroeder, personal communication). About 80% of the additional nucleotides in  $V_\kappa-J_\kappa$  junctions are C and G residues. This fits what would be expected for TdT-catalysed insertions, but it also fits the composition of germline nucleotides adjacent to those  $V_\kappa$  and  $J_\kappa$  genes that are frequently found in  $V_\kappa-J_\kappa$  joints (Klein *et al.*, 1993; Victor and Capra, 1994). Therefore, it has to be checked in every case whether it is more likely that the additional nucleotides are germline or TdT derived or inserted by still another mechanism.

## DISPERSED $V_\kappa$ GENES

$V_\kappa$  genes that are located outside the  $\kappa$  locus were called orphans in analogy to the histone and ribosomal RNA genes found outside the respective loci (Childs *et al.*, 1981). The  $V_\kappa$  orphans were discovered when it proved impossible to link by

chromosomal walking certain  $V_\kappa$  gene-containing cosmid clones to the existing contigs of the  $\kappa$  locus (Lütscher *et al.*, 1986). The true locations of the orphan  $V_\kappa$  clones were first shown with the help of panels of human-rodent cell hybrid DNAs and later by *in situ* hybridization. Twenty-four orphan  $V_\kappa$  genes have been cloned and sequenced. One of them is localized on chromosome 1 and a cluster of five  $V_\kappa$  genes on chromosome 22 (Lütscher *et al.*, 1986, 1988a). For five  $V_\kappa$  orphans it is only known that they are very similar to each other in sequence but not identical and that they are located on chromosomes other than chromosome 2 (Straubinger *et al.*, 1988c; Röschenhaler *et al.*, 1992). This so-called Z family of  $V_\kappa$  orphans may, in fact, have several more members (Meindl *et al.*, 1990a). Two yeast artificial chromosome (YAC) clones and three cosmid clones with restriction maps and hybridization properties similar to those of Z-orphan clones were isolated but not studied in detail (Pargent, 1991; Huber, 1993). Because of the high sequence similarity between the Z orphans it would require much effort to specify whether newly isolated clones are derived from independent loci or whether they are alleles of already known orphans (Röschenhaler *et al.*, 1992).

Of the 24 sequenced orphans 13 are localized on chromosome 2. One of them is located 1.5 Mb 3' of  $C_\kappa$  (V268 in Fig. 1). According to its sequence this  $V_\kappa$  gene is potentially functional (Huber *et al.*, 1994) and a  $V_\kappa-J_\kappa$  rearrangement by inversion would not involve larger fragments than the rearrangements of  $V_\kappa$  genes of the d copy of the locus. However, no rearrangement products have been found yet. Because of its location outside the locus the gene is classified as an orphan. Another  $V_\kappa$  orphan without sequence defects is located on the long arm of chromosome 2 (V108 in Fig. 1; Huber *et al.*, 1990). The 11  $V_\kappa$  orphans of the W regions (Fig. 1), on the other hand, are pseudogenes also according to their sequences (Zimmer *et al.*, 1990a). The three groups of W orphans were mapped to a 4.3-Mb region (Fig. 1; Weichhold *et al.*, 1992). They were probably derived from gene regions of the  $\kappa$  locus by a pericentric inversion and subsequent amplification events (Zimmer *et al.*, 1990b).

All  $V_\kappa$  orphans contain introns and, therefore, should have been dispersed on the DNA and not on the RNA and retrotranscript level; also, germline  $V_\kappa$  genes are believed not to be transcribed. Since, according to their sequences, all orphans, with one exception, have their closest relatives in the O regions (Schäble *et al.*, 1994), they may have been derived in evolution from a common precursor. However, the structural similarities between orphans and  $\kappa$  locus regions are not high enough to allow a duplicative mechanism of orphan formation to be postulated. The attempts to specify other features of the dispersion mechanism(s) have not been very successful. One such feature is the presence of sequences in the neighbourhood of some orphans that were supposed to bind replication and/or transcription factors (Lütscher *et al.*, 1988b), but no convincing arguments could be derived from that. At break-off points of homology between different orphan regions, which are probably junctions between translocated and receiving structures, direct and inverted repeats and an *Alu* element were found (Borden *et al.*, 1990). However, since the sequence features differed from one insertion break-point to the other, no unique mechanism of translocation could be proposed.

## REPETITIVE AND UNIQUE SEQUENCES IN THE $\kappa$ LOCUS

The  $\kappa$  locus was not specifically investigated for repetitive elements but 15 LINE1 and 25 *Alu* sequences were detected in hybridization experiments and/or sequence comparisons. The properties of the elements and some evolutionary considerations were compiled by Schable *et al.* (1994). In the same report the unique sequences which qualify as sequence-tagged sites (STS) as defined by Olson *et al.* (1989), are described. Such sequences are an important feature of the Human Genome Project, since they should allow the reproducible detection via PCR of certain chromosomal sites or the isolation of the respective clones from libraries. The STS sequences are distributed fairly well across the  $\kappa$  locus.

## EVOLUTION OF THE VK GENES

A crucial event in the recent history of the  $\kappa$  locus was its duplication. The sequenced regions of the p- and d-copy genes and pseudogenes differ on average by about 1% (404 of 38 136 bp; Schable and Zachau, 1993). If one assumes 1% of divergence to correspond to 1 million years of evolution (Wilson *et al.*, 1987), this should be the age of the duplicated locus. However, there are various caveats. First, the extent of divergence is highly uneven across the locus ranging from 0 to 3.7% for different gene regions, which may be interpreted in terms of a surveillance mechanism counteracting in certain regions the mutational divergence. In addition, the basic relation of 1% mutation per  $10^6$  years is certainly not undisputed. However, the postulated date of duplication may be roughly right since the  $\kappa$  locus of the chimpanzee seems not to be duplicated (Ernert *et al.*, 1995) and the time point in the evolution when human and chimpanzee clades diverged may have been 4–5 million years ago.  $V_{\kappa}$  and  $C_{\kappa}$  sequences of non-human primates are very similar to human ones, e.g. the  $C_{\kappa}$  sequences of the chimpanzee and human are 99.6% identical.

Many events in the evolution of the  $\kappa$  locus occurred long before its duplication, e.g. the interdigitation of  $V_{\kappa}$  genes of different subgroups (Fech and Zachau, 1984; review Zachau, 1989b) and the duplication of a group of three  $V_{\kappa}$  genes (Huber *et al.*, 1993a). Also most changes, which converted  $V_{\kappa}$  genes to pseudogenes, happened before the duplication of the locus. Another old feature of the  $\kappa$  locus is the dispersion of  $V_{\kappa}$  genes to other parts of the genome. Since cosmid clones from the orphon regions of chromosomes 1 and 22 hybridized *in situ* to the assumed homologous chromosome bands of all great apes (Arnold *et al.*, 1995), the trans-cosmid clone from one of the W regions was found to hybridize to a site that was pericentrically inverted in the corresponding chromosome of the chimpanzee, but not in that of the gorilla. Accordingly, the transposition occurred after the gorilla and before the chimpanzee clades diverged from the human evolutionary tree. This is

also the time when the Y108 region (see above; Fig. 1) became dissociated from the  $\kappa$  locus (Ernert *et al.*, 1995). The amplification of the transposed W region then occurred in at least two steps, which are postulated to have taken place  $2 \times 10^6$  and  $10^7$  years ago, respectively (Zimmer *et al.*, 1990a).

Events that have to be dated after the duplication of the  $\kappa$  locus are the deletions of parts of Ap, Ld and Lp (Lautner-Rieske *et al.*, 1992; Huber *et al.*, 1993a), the insertion of an *Alu* element into one but not the other copy of the locus (Lautner-Rieske *et al.*, 1992; Schable *et al.*, 1994) and at least some of the gene conversion-like events in the L regions (Huber *et al.*, 1993b). Most events that led to the divergence of the copies of the  $\kappa$  locus were point mutations. Not surprisingly, twice as many transitions as transversions are observed (Schable and Zachau, 1993).

## BIOMEDICAL IMPLICATIONS

Since there is reasonable certainty by now that all functional germline  $V_{\kappa}$  genes of the locus are known, conclusions are possible as to which part of the repertoire is expressed at which time in the development of the immune response. The  $\kappa$  chains found in pathological conditions, such as as autoimmune diseases or lymphomas, can be assigned to certain germline  $V_{\kappa}$  genes (compiled in Klein *et al.*, 1993; Klein *et al.*, 1995).

The individual who lacks, in a homozygous fashion, the d copy of the  $\kappa$  locus with its 36  $V_{\kappa}$  genes (individual and haplotype 11; see p. 181) is apparently healthy and his  $\kappa$  chain/ $\lambda$  chain ratio is not altered (Schable and Zachau, 1993). In general, the d-copy genes are not expressed to a great extent (Fig. 2) but it is known that the d-copy gene A2 codes for the most common light chain in the *Haemophilus influenzae* response (Scott *et al.*, 1989). Vaccination of individual 11 with the appropriate carbohydrate vaccine gave rise to antibodies whose light chains were derived, of course, from p-copy genes, but these light chains contained more somatic mutations than the usual A2-derived light chains (Scott *et al.*, 1991; review Scott *et al.*, 1992).

There is a 0.1% incidence of pericentric inversions of chromosome 2 in the present-day population. They have been formed in a process that is supposedly still going on. Heterozygous and homozygous (Gelman-Kohan *et al.*, 1993) individuals are apparently healthy. The inverted chromosomes carry the  $\kappa$  locus on the long arm and the W orphans on the short arm. The breakpoint on the long arm is, at the present level of analysis, indistinguishable from the one of the pericentric inversion that occurred in evolution (Lautner-Rieske *et al.*, 1993; previous literature quoted therein).

## MISCELLANEOUS AND CONCLUDING REMARKS

The  $\kappa$  locus and its immediate surroundings comprise 2–3 Mb (Fig. 1), i.e. somewhat less than 0.1% of the human genome; 1040 kb of the locus and 800 kb of  $\kappa$ -related

sequences from outside the locus have been cloned and mapped at high resolution, 160 kb and 90 kb respectively of the clones have been sequenced, mostly gene regions, deletion breakpoints and the like. An additional 11 Mb in the neighbourhood of the  $\kappa$  locus and the orphans have been mapped at medium or low resolution. Further work on the  $\kappa$  locus, particularly large-scale sequencing studies, will contribute to the general understanding of genome structure and evolution, and there will always be surprising results in this type of work. One of the more interesting questions is whether there are non- $V_{\kappa}$  open reading frames between the known  $V_{\kappa}$  genes and particularly in the still uncloned part between the p and d copies of the locus. The related question of detecting non- $V_{\kappa}$  transcripts from the germline  $\kappa$  locus was studied recently and the results were clearly negative for a number of cell lines (Lautner-Rieske *et al.*, 1995). In the gap between the p and d copies clusters of rare cutter restriction sites were observed (Weichhold *et al.*, 1993a) as they are found in CpG islands adjacent to housekeeping genes. However, only a combination of further cloning, sequencing and expression studies can reveal whether there are non- $V_{\kappa}$  genes located within or near the  $\kappa$  locus.

The study of the  $\kappa$  genes has advanced to a state where the germline and expressed repertoires are largely known. Some open questions are general problems of immunogenetics, such as the enzymology and mechanisms of V(D)J joining, V gene maturation by hypermutation and selection, and the switch from  $\kappa$  to  $\lambda$  gene expression. The known structures provide a basis for further mechanistic studies aimed at answering these questions.

## NOTE ADDED IN PROOF

This review was concluded at the time of submission in March 1994 and only partially updated in the proofs in June 1995.

## Acknowledgements

I thank the members of our group for their contributions and for the discussion of the present manuscript. The work of our laboratory was supported by the Bundesministerium für Forschung und Technologie, Center Grant 0316200A, and the Fonds der Chemischen Industrie.

## REFERENCES

- Alt, F.W. and Baltimore, D. (1982). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **79**, 4118-4122.
- Arnold, N., Wienberg, J., Emmert, K. and Zachau, H.G. (1995). *Genomics* **26**, 147-150.
- Bentley, D.L. and Rabbitts, T.H. (1980). *Nature* **288**, 730-733.
- Bentley, D.L. and Rabbitts, T.H. (1981). *Cell* **24**, 613-623.
- Bentley, D.L. and Rabbitts, T.H. (1983). *Cell* **32**, 181-189.
- Berek, C. (1993). *Curr. Opin. Immunol.* **5**, 218-222.
- Bergman, Y., Rice, D., Grosschedl, R. and Baltimore, D. (1984). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **81**, 7041-7045.
- Betz, A.G., Milstein, C., González-Fernández, A., Pannell, R., Larson, T. and Neuberg, M.S. (1994). *Cell* **77**, 239-248.
- Borden, P., Jaenichen, R. and Zachau, H.G. (1990). *Nucleic Acids Res.* **18**, 2101-2107.
- Childs, G., Maxson, R., Cohn, R.H. and Kedes, L. (1981). *Cell* **23**, 651-663.
- Choi, C.L. and Morrison, S.L. (1993). *J. Immunol.* **150**, 5350-5360.
- Cox, J.P.L., Tomlinson, I.M. and Winter, G. (1994). *Eur. J. Immunol.* **24**, 827-836.
- Emmert, K. (1994). Doctoral Thesis, Fakultät für Chemie und Pharmazie, Universität München.
- Emmert, K., Mühlthaler, H., Schenck, W. and Zachau, H.G. (1995). *Genomics* **25**, 623-629.
- Falkner, F.G. and Zachau, H.G. (1984). *Nature* **310**, 71-74.
- Field, L.L., Tobias, R. and Bech-Hansen, T. (1987). *Nucleic Acids Res.* **15**, 3942.
- Gelman-Kohan, Z., Rosenblatt, J., Nisami Ben-Cohen, R. and Chomka, J. (1993). *Hum. Genet.* **92**, 427.
- Gimble, J.M. and Max, E.E. (1987). *Mol. Cell. Biol.* **7**, 15-25.
- Grüniger, W.B., Goldman, P.L., Morton, C.C., O'Brien, S.J. and Korsmeyer, S.J. (1988). *J. Exp. Med.* **167**, 488-501.
- Heinzel, M., Maizels, N. and Leung, H. (1995). In 'Progress in Nucleic Acid Research and Molecular Biology' (W.E. Cohn and K. Moldave, eds) Vol. 50, pp. 67-99. Academic Press, New York.
- Hieber, P.A., Max, E.E., Seidman, J.G., Maizel, J.V. and Leder, P. (1980). *Cell* **22**, 197-207.
- Hieber, P.A., Maizel, J.V. and Leder, P. (1982). *J. Biol. Chem.* **257**, 1516-1522.
- Hirama, T., Takeuchi, S., Yoshida, Y. and Yamagishi, H. (1991). *Immunol. Lett.* **27**, 19-24.
- Höglom, B., Magnusson, A.-C. and Leanderson, T. (1991). *Nucleic Acids Res.* **19**, 4347-4354.
- Huber, C. (1993). Doctoral Thesis, Fakultät für Chemie und Pharmazie, Universität München.
- Huber, C., Thiebe, R., Hamelster, H., Smola, H., Lötscher, E. and Zachau, H.G. (1990). *Nucleic Acids Res.* **18**, 3475-3478.
- Huber, C., Klobbeck, H.-G. and Zachau, H.G. (1992). *Eur. J. Immunol.* **22**, 1561-1565.
- Huber, C., Huber, E., Lautner-Rieske, A., Schäble, K.F. and Zachau, H.G. (1993a). *Eur. J. Immunol.* **23**, 2860-2867.
- Huber, C., Schäble, K.F., Huber, E., Klein, R., Meindl, A., Thiebe, R., Lamm, R. and Zachau, H.G. (1993b). *Eur. J. Immunol.* **23**, 2868-2875.
- Huber, C., Thiebe, R. and Zachau, H.G. (1994). *Genomics* **22**, 213-215.
- Jüde, J.-G. and Max, E.E. (1992). *Mol. Cell. Biol.* **12**, 5206-5216.
- Kabat, E.A., Wu, T.T., Perry, H.M., Gottesman, K.S. and Foeller, C. (1991). 'Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest' NIH Publication No. 91-3242.
- Klein, R. and Zachau, H.G. (1995). *Ann. NY Acad. Sci.*, in press.
- Klein, R., Jaenichen, R. and Zachau, H.G. (1993). *Eur. J. Immunol.* **23**, 3248-3271.
- Klein, U., Klein, G., Ehlin-Henriksson, B., Rajewsky, K. and Klippert, R. (1995). *Molecular Medicine*, in press.
- Klobbeck, H.-G. and Zachau, H.G. (1986). *Nucleic Acids Res.* **14**, 4591-4603.
- Klobbeck, H.-G., Bornkamm, G.W., Combrato, G., Mückert, R., Pohlentz, H.D. and Zachau, H.G. (1985). *Nucleic Acids Res.* **13**, 6515-6529.
- Klobbeck, H.-G., Zimmer, F.-J., Combrato, G. and Zachau, H.G. (1987a). *Nucleic Acids Res.* **15**, 9655-9665.
- Klobbeck, H.-G., Combrato, G. and Zachau, H.G. (1987b). *Nucleic Acids Res.* **15**, 4877-4888.
- Klobbeck, H.-G., Combrato, G. and Zachau, H.G. (1989). *Biol. Chem. Hoppe-Seyler* **370**, 1007-1012.
- Kofler, R., Geley, S., Kofler, H. and Heinberg, A. (1992). *Immunol. Rev.* **128**, 5-21.
- Kunth, J.H. and Cavalli-Storza, L.L. (1994). *Ann. J. Hum. Genet.* **54**, 1037-1041.
- Lafaille, J.J., DeCloux, A., Bonneville, M., Takegaki, Y. and Tonegawa, S. (1989). *Cell* **59**, 859-870.
- Lautner-Rieske, A., Thiebe, R. and Zachau, H.G. (1995). *Gene*, **159**, 199-202.
- Lautner-Rieske, A., Huber, C., Meindl, A., Pargent, W., Schäble, K.F., Thiebe, R., Zocher, I. and Zachau, H.G. (1992). *Eur. J. Immunol.* **22**, 1023-1029.
- Lautner-Rieske, A., Hamelster, H., Barth, G. and Zachau, H.G. (1993). *Genomics* **16**, 497-502.



- Lewis, S., Rosenberg, N., Alt, F. and Baltimore, D. (1982). *Cell* 30, 807-816.
- Lewis, S.M. (1994). *Adv. Immunol.* 56, 27-150.
- Lorenz, W., Straubinger, B. and Zachau, H.G. (1987). *Nucleic Acids Res.* 15, 9667-9676.
- Lorenz, W., Schäble, K.F., Thiede, R., Starnetz, J. and Zachau, H.G. (1988). *Mol. Immunol.* 25, 479-484.
- Lötscher, E., Grzeschik, K.-H., Bauer, H.-G., Pohlenz, H.-D., Straubinger, B. and Zachau, H.G. (1986). *Neure* 320, 456-458.
- Lötscher, E., Zimmer, F.-J., Klopsch, T., Grzeschik, K.-H., Jannichen, R., Straubinger, B. and Zachau, H.G. (1988a). *Gene* 69, 215-223.
- Lötscher, E., Sówka, W., Zimmer, F.-J., Grunmt, F. and Zachau, H.G. (1988b). *Gene* 69, 225-236.
- McBride, O.W., Hieier, P.A., Hollis, G.F., Swan, D., Oley, M.G. and Leder, P. (1982). *J. Exp. Med.* 155, 1480-1490.
- MacLennan, I.C.M. (1994). *Curr. Biol.* 4, 70-72.
- Malcolm, S., Barton, P., Murphy, C., Ferguson-Smith, M.A., Bentley, D.L. and Rabbitts, T.H. (1982). *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 79, 4957-4961.
- Marks, J.D., Tristem, M., Karpas, A. and Winkler, G. (1991). *J. Immunol.* 21, 985-991.
- Martin, D., Huang, R., LeBlond, T. and Van Ness, B. (1991). *J. Exp. Med.* 173, 639-645.
- Meindl, A., Klobbeck, H.-G., Ohnheiser, R. and Zachau, H.G. (1990a). *Eur. J. Immunol.* 20, 1855-1863.
- Meindl, A., Klobbeck, B., Schalkenberger, M. and Zachau, H.G. (1990b). *Exp. Clin. Immunogenet.* 7, 20-25.
- Möckel, R., Puij, G.J.M., van der Vliet, P.E. and Zachau, H.G. (1988). *Nucleic Acids Res.* 16, 3693-3704.
- Möckel, R., Falder, F.-G. and Zachau, H.G. (1989). In 'Tissue Specific Gene Expression' (R. Renkawitz ed.), pp. 73-85. VCH Verlag, Weinheim.
- Mortley, G. and Gibbs, R.S. (1992). *Genomics* 13, 104-108.
- Müller, B., Sappert, H. and Reib, M. (1990). *Eur. J. Immunol.* 20, 1409-1411.
- Olson, M., Hood, L., Cantor, C. and Boistein, D. (1989). *Science* 245, 1434-1435.
- Pargent, W. (1991). Doctoral Thesis, Fakultät für Biologie, Universität München.
- Pargent, W., Meindl, A., Thiede, R., Mitzel, S. and Zachau, H.G. (1991a). *Eur. J. Immunol.* 21, 1821-1827.
- Pargent, W., Schäble, K.F. and Zachau, H.G. (1991b). *Eur. J. Immunol.* 21, 1829-1835.
- Parslow, T.G., Blair, D.L., Murphy, W.J. and Grawner, D.K. (1984). *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 81, 2650-2654.
- Pech, M. and Zachau, H.G. (1984). *Nucleic Acids Res.* 12, 9229-9236.
- Pech, M., Höcht, J., Schnell, H. and Zachau, H.G. (1981). *Nature* 291, 668-670.
- Pech, M., Smola, H., Pohlenz, H.-D., Straubinger, B., Gerl, R. and Zachau, H.G. (1985). *J. Mol. Biol.* 183, 291-299.
- Rosenthaler, F., Schäble, K.F., Thiede, R. and Zachau, H.G. (1992). *Biol. Chem. Hoppe-Seyler* 373, 177-186.
- Roth, D.B., Menetski, J.P., Nakajima, P.B., Bosma, M.J. and Gellert, M. (1992). *Cell* 70, 983-991.
- Saketa, K. and Baltimore, D. (1993). *Mol. Cell Biol.* 13, 3698-3705.
- Schäble, K.F. and Zachau, H.G. (1993). *Biol. Chem. Hoppe-Seyler* 374, 1001-1022.
- Schäble, K.F., Thiede, R., Meindl, A., Flügel, A. and Zachau, H.G. (1994). *Biol. Chem. Hoppe-Seyler* 375, 189-199.
- Schäble, G., Rappold, G.A., Pargent, W. and Zachau, H.G. (1993). *Hum. Genet.* 91, 261-267; Erratum 92, 195.
- Scott, M.G., Cimmmins, D.L., McCourt, D.W., Chung, G., Schäble, K.F., Thiede, R., Zachau, H.G. and Nahn, M.H. (1989). *J. Immunol.* 143, 4110-4116.
- Scott, M.G., Cimmmins, D.L., McCourt, D.W., Chung, G., Schäble, K.F., Thiede, R., Quenzel, E.-M., Zachau, H.G. and Nahn, M.H. (1991). *J. Immunol.* 147, 4007-4013.
- Scott, M.G., Zachau, H.G. and Nahn, M.H. (1992). *Int. Rev. Immunol.* 9, 45-55.
- Sigvardsson, M., Benmark, M. and Leanderson, T. (1995). *Mol. Cell Biol.* 15, 1343-1352.
- Simionovitch, K.A., Bakshi, A., Goldman, P. and Korsmeyer, S.J. (1985). *Nature* 316, 260-262.
- Staudt, L.M. and Lenardo, M.J. (1991). *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* 9, 373-398.
- Steinmetz, M., Altenburger, W. and Zachau, H.G. (1980). *Nucleic Acids Res.* 8, 1709-1720.
- Straubinger, B., Thiede, R., Huber, C., Ostertolzer, E. and Zachau, H.G. (1988a). *Biol. Chem. Hoppe-Seyler* 369, 601-607.
- Straubinger, B., Huber, E., Lorenz, W., Ostertolzer, E., Pargent, W., Pech, M., Pohlenz, H.-D., Zimmer, F.-J. and Zachau, H.G. (1988b). *J. Mol. Biol.* 199, 23-34.
- Straubinger, B., Thiede, R., Pech, M. and Zachau, H.G. (1988c). *Gene* 69, 209-214.
- Tumbull, I.F., Sripakash, K.S. and Mathews, J.D. (1987). *Immunogenetics* 25, 193-199.
- Vassart, G., Georges, M., Monseur, R., Brocas, H., Lequart, A.S. and Christophe, D. (1987). *Science* 235, 683-684.
- Vicior, K.D. and Capra, J.D. (1994). *Mol. Immunol.* 31, 39-46.
- Weichold, G.M., Klobbeck, H.-G., Ohnheiser, R., Corniario, G. and Zachau, H.G. (1990). *Nature* 347, 90-92.
- Weichold, G.M., Launer-Rieske, A. and Zachau, H.G. (1992). *Biol. Chem. Hoppe-Seyler* 373, 1159-1164.
- Weichold, G.M., Ohnheiser, R. and Zachau, H.G. (1993a). *Genomics* 16, 503-511.
- Weichold, G.M., Huber, C., Parnes, J.R. and Zachau, H.G. (1993b). *Genomics* 16, 512-514.
- Weichold, G.M., Ohnheiser, R. and Zachau, H.G. (1993c). In 'Progress in Immunology', vol. 8 (I. Gergely et al., eds), pp. 115-119. Springer Verlag, Berlin.
- Whitehurst, C., Henney, H.R., Max, E.E., Schroeder, H.W. Jr., Stiller, F., Simionovitch, K.A. and Garard, W.T. (1992). *Nucleic Acids Res.* 20, 4929-4930.
- Wilson, A.C., Oshman, H. and Prager, E.M. (1987). *Trends Genet.* 3, 241-247.
- Wirth, T., Staudt, L. and Baltimore, D. (1987). *Nature* 329, 174-178.
- Zachau, H.G. (1989a). In 'Immunoglobulin Genes' (T. Honjo, F.W. Alt and T.H. Rabbitts, eds), pp. 91-109. Academic Press, London.
- Zachau, H.G. (1989b). In 'Evolutionary Tinkering in Gene Expression' (M. Grunberg-Manago, B.F.C., Clark and H.G. Zachau, eds), pp. 111-119. Plenum Publishing, London.
- Zachau, H.G. (1990). *Biol. Chem. Hoppe-Seyler* 371, 1-6.
- Zachau, H.G. (1993). *Gene* 135, 167-173.
- Zachau, H.G. (1995). *The Immunologist*, in press.
- Zimmer, F.-J., Huber, C., Quenzel, E.-M., Schek, H., Stiller, C., Thiede, R. and Zachau, H.G. (1990a). *Biol. Chem. Hoppe-Seyler* 371, 283-290.
- Zimmer, F.-J., Hammeier, H., Schek, H. and Zachau, H.G. (1990b). *EMBO J.* 9, 1535-1542.

## REVIEW

## The Variable Genes of the Human Immunoglobulin $\kappa$ Locus

Karlheinz F. SCHÄBLE and Hans G. ZACHAU

Institut für Physiologische Chemie der Universität München

(Received 23 August 1993)

Human immunoglobulin genes of the  $\kappa$  type have been studied intensively during the past several years. Since the early work of Bentley and Rabbitts<sup>[1,2]</sup> a number of laboratories have contributed to the knowledge of the immunoglobulin  $\kappa$  genes and their function. About a dozen years ago, we embarked on a systematic study of the structure of the  $\kappa$  locus, the mechanism of  $V_{\kappa}$ - $J_{\kappa}$  rearrangements and the expression of the rearranged genes. The work was reviewed in regular intervals<sup>[3–5]</sup>. Now that our studies are drawing to a close, a general review was written<sup>[6]</sup> describing the results and conclusions on the  $V_{\kappa}$  gene repertoire, on somatic hypermutation, the upstream regulatory elements and the various rearrangements and translocations of the  $V_{\kappa}$  genes; also some biomedical implications and evolutionary aspects were briefly dealt with. Since probably all  $V_{\kappa}$  genes of the locus are now known, it seems timely to compile their sequences and to review the conclusions which can be reached from the comparisons.

### 1) The structure of the human $\kappa$ locus

Fig. 1 gives an overview of the  $\kappa$  locus. It serves as an introduction to this review and, at the same time, presents some results of sequence comparisons which will be discussed below. The locus is largely duplicated comprising a  $C_{\kappa}$  proximal contig (p) of 600 kb and a distal contig (d) of 440 kb, which are separated by 800 kb of as yet uncloned and probably  $V_{\kappa}$  gene-free DNA. The detailed restriction map of the locus comprises 3Mb, while additional 4Mb were mapped at low resolution<sup>[7,8]</sup>.

The two large contigs p and d emerged from smaller ones that had been studied separately on numerous cosmid and phage  $\lambda$  clones: Op/Od<sup>[9]</sup>, Ap/Ad<sup>[10]</sup>, Lp/Ld<sup>[11,12]</sup>, B<sup>[13]</sup> and  $J_{\kappa}$ - $C_{\kappa}$ - $\kappa$ de<sup>[14,15]</sup>. References to previous reports on the regions are cited in the quoted publications. The small contigs were fused to form the two large ones by chromosomal walking<sup>[9–15]</sup>. Although we have good indirect evidence that the  $\kappa$  locus has been fully or almost fully cloned<sup>[6,12]</sup> we try to extend, with the help of YAC clones, the existing contigs at their 5' and 3' sides.

### 2) Number and classification of the $V_{\kappa}$ genes

The p contig comprises the single  $C_{\kappa}$ , five  $J_{\kappa}$  and 40  $V_{\kappa}$  gene segments, while in the d contig 36  $V_{\kappa}$  gene segments were found. There are 10 solitary  $V_{\kappa}$  genes and 33 gene pairs whose sequences are 95–100% identical in the coding regions. 32 of the 76  $V_{\kappa}$  genes are potentially functional, 16 have minor defects, 25 are pseudogenes and for three genes both potentially functional and slightly defective alleles have been found.

The minor defects are defined as one or two one-bp alterations in a gene, for instance a stop codon in the coding part and/or a deviation from the canonical sequences of regulatory elements, splice sites or the hepta- and nonanucleotide recombination sites. The replacement of a codon for an invariant amino acid (see below) by another codon is not considered to be such a defect, although for some  $V_{\kappa}$  genes with such alterations no mRNA or  $\kappa$  proteins have been

#### Abbreviations:

$V_{\kappa}$ ,  $J_{\kappa}$  and  $C_{\kappa}$ : variable, joining and constant gene segments of the  $\kappa$  locus, respectively; Op/Od, Ap/Ad, Lp/Ld and B regions:  $V_{\kappa}$  gene-containing regions of the  $C_{\kappa}$  proximal (p) or distal (d) copies of the human  $\kappa$  locus, respectively (see Fig. 1); bp: base pair(s); kb: kilobase(s) or 1000 bp; Mb: megabase(s) or 10<sup>6</sup> bp; YAC: yeast artificial chromosome; PCR: polymerase chain reaction; pf: potentially functional; mid: minor defects; ps: pseudo; dc: decanucleotide box; pd: 15-mer box.

found<sup>[16]</sup>. The 16 genes with minor defects are defined as a separate class of genes, since also for them as for the three just mentioned ones potentially functional alleles may exist in the human population.

All known  $V_{\alpha}$  genes and pseudogenes of the  $\alpha$  locus on chromosome 2p11-12 are listed together with some pertinent data in Table 1. The sequences of all poten-

tially functional and slightly defective  $V_{\alpha}$  genes and also some pseudogene sequences have been published previously, and the data on the remaining pseudogenes are presented in another report<sup>[17]</sup>. Also included in Table 1 are the so-called orphon  $V_{\alpha}$  genes which lie outside the  $\alpha$  locus on the same chromosome or on others. Up to now, 12 orphans were localized on the long arm of chromosome 2, one on its short arm and 11 on other chromosomes. Most of the orphans turned out to be pseudogenes, not only because of their location but also because of defects in their sequences. Two orphon  $V_{\alpha}$  genes (V108 and V268) have sequences that conform to the criteria of potential functionality; they are, however, listed as pseudogenes in Table 1 because of their location on the long arm of chromosome 2 (V108; ref.<sup>[18]</sup>) and on the short arm of this chromosome, but on the 3' side of  $C_{\alpha}$  at a distance of 1.5 Mb (V268; ref.<sup>[19]</sup>). There are probably further orphans scattered across the genome<sup>[20]</sup>, but there is no compelling reason for us to study them exhaustively.

The evidence that all  $V_{\alpha}$  genes of the locus have been cloned is indirect. It rests on three arguments.

- No  $V_{\alpha}$  genes were found in the admittedly relatively short extending regions of the existing contigs<sup>[9,14]</sup>.
- Semiquantitative analyses of blot hybridizations of genomic DNA digests with  $V_{\alpha}$  gene probes indicate that the number of signals not assigned to the cloned  $V_{\alpha}$  genes at the time is small<sup>[21]</sup>; by now the genes corresponding to such signals have either been cloned or are attributed to orphon genes<sup>[12,20]</sup>.
- In analyses of the  $V_{\alpha}$  mRNA/cDNAs and  $\alpha$  proteins all gene products could be assigned to the known germ-line  $V_{\alpha}$  genes and no evidence for the existence of hitherto undetected germ-line  $V_{\alpha}$  genes was found<sup>[16]</sup>.

Since the three arguments are circumstantial we can only state that the number of  $V_{\alpha}$  genes and pseudogenes in the locus very likely is 76.

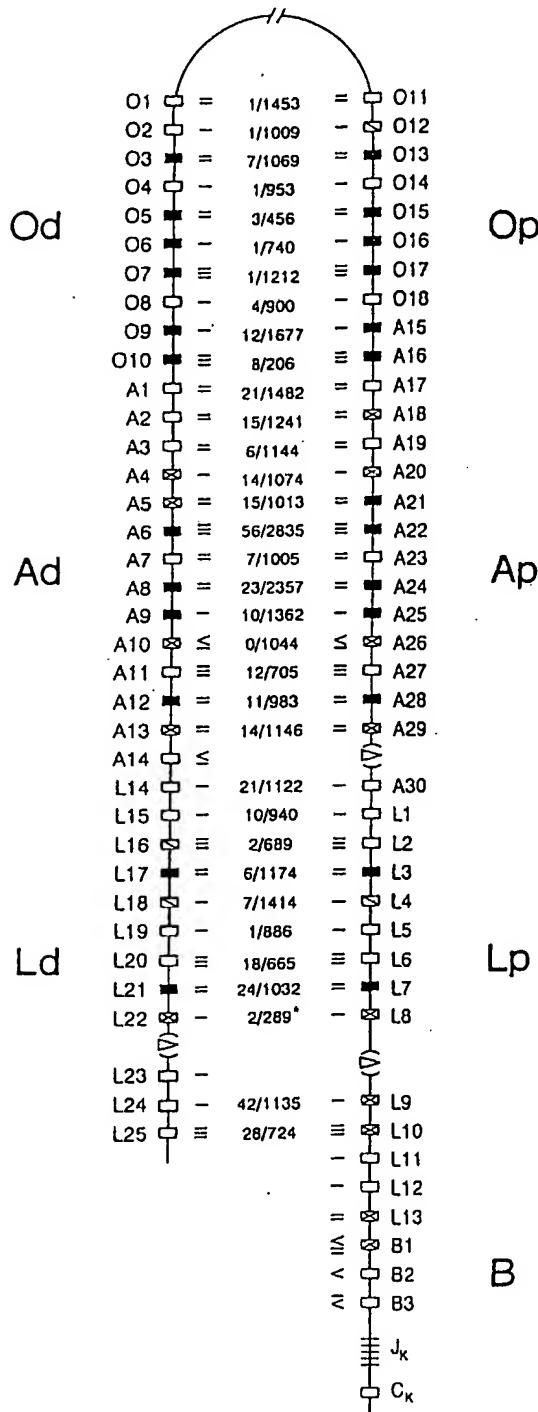


Fig. 1. Outline of the human  $\alpha$  locus.

Open boxes represent potentially functional genes, the filled boxes pseudogenes. Open boxes with crossed lines indicate genes with minor defects (as defined in the text). The three genes for which potentially functional and slightly defective alleles are known are marked by one diagonal line. The subgroups are indicated by Roman numerals. The deletions ( $\Delta$ ) in the A and L regions have been described<sup>[10,11]</sup>. The drawing is not to scale. The number of nucleotides sequenced in both the p and d copy gene regions are given together with the number of differences between the regions. An asterisk at L8/L22 indicates that only the part of L22 which is highly homologous to L8<sup>[12]</sup> is compared.

Table 1. The genes of the human  $\kappa$  locus (O11-B3) and the orphon V<sub>κ</sub> genes (W1-V268a).

Description <sup>a</sup>	Characteristics <sup>b</sup>	Divergence <sup>c</sup>		Described in	Accession <sup>d</sup> number
		L	V		
O11	II, St, pf } <sup>TP</sup>	0	0	[9]	X59314
O1	II, St, pf }	0	0	[9]	X59311
O11a (V3a)	II, fl, pf }	-	3(2)	[9]	X59317
O12	I, St, pf, RP } <sup>RTP</sup>	0	0	[9]	X59315
O2	I, St, pf }	0	0	[9]	X59312
O12a (V3b)	I, fl, md }	1(1)	8(3)	[9]	X59318
O13	II, St, ps	-	1	[17]	X71888
O3	II, St, ps	-	1	[17]	X71892
O14 (Q5)	I, St, pf }	0	0	[9]	X59316
O4	I, St, pf }	0	0	[9]	X71893
O4/14a (DILp1)	I, DIL, pf }	0	0	[52]	
O15 (Q8)	II, St, ps	-	0	[17]	X71889
O5	II, St, ps	-	0	[17]	X71893
O16 (Q1)	I, St, ps	0	1	[17]	X71890
O6	I, St, ps	0	1	[17]	X71894
O6/16a (V55)	I, St, ps	0	2	[53]	X00749
O17	III, St, ps	0	0	[17]	X71891
O7	III, St, ps	0	0	[17]	X71895
O18	I, St, pf } <sup>RTP</sup>	0	0	[25]	M64856
O8	I, St, pf }	0	0	[25]	M64855
O18a	I, St, pf }	1(1)	0	[25]	M64857
A15	I, St, ps	1	1	[17]	X71883
O9	I, St, ps	1	1	[17]	X71896
A15a (HK100)	I, fl, ps	0	0	[1]	V00560
A16	III, St, ps	1	1	[17]	X71883
O10	III, St, ps	1	1	[17]	X71896
A16a	III, fl, ps	-	0	[54]	M17765
(Humkv301)					
A16/O10b	III, fl, ps	-	0	[54]	M17764
(Humkv310)					
A17	II, St, pf, RTP	0	1(1)	[10]	X63403
A1	II, St, pf, T	0	1(1)	[10]	X63402
A18	II, St, md, RT	1	6(5)	[10]	X63396
A2	II, St, pf, TP	1	6(5)	[55]	M31952
A19 (Q7)	II, N, pf }	0	0	[10]	X63397
A3	II, St, pf, RP } <sup>RTP</sup>	0	0	[56]	X12690
A20 (Y2)	I, N, md, RT	2(1)	2(1)	[10]	X63398
A4	I, St, md	2(1)	2(1)	[56]	
A4a (V52)	I, St, md	2(1)	2(1)	[53]	X00748
A21	II, St, md	0	3	[17]	X71884
A5	II, St, ps	0	3	[56]	X12689
A22	III, St, ps	1	6	[57]	X12685
A6	III, St, ps	1	6	[17]	X71886
A23	II, St, pf, RT	0	4(3)	[56]	X12684
A7	II, St, pf }	0	4(3)	[10]	X63401
A24	II, St, ps	0	2	[17]	X71885
A8	II, St, ps	0	2	[17]	X71887
A25	I, St, ps	1	2	[17]	X71885
A9	I, St, ps	1	2	[17]	X71887
A26	VI, St, md } <sup>T</sup>	0	0	[10]	X63399
A10	VI, St, md }	0	0	[27]	X12683

0 2 1

2 2

2 1

2 1

2 1

1 1

2 1

2 2

Description <sup>a</sup>	Characteristics <sup>b</sup>	Divergence <sup>c</sup>		Described in	Access- sion <sup>d</sup> number
		L	V		
A27	III, St, pf, RTP			[56]	X12686
A27a (Humkv325)	III, fl, pf	0	0	[58]	M15038
A11	III, St, pf, R	0	5(4)	[56]	X12687
A11a (Humkv305)	III, fl, pf,	0	5(4)	[55] [54]	M14507
A28	II, St, ps			[56]	X12692
A12	II, St, ps	-	3	[17]	X71882
A29	II, St, md			[10]	X63400
A13	II, St, md	1(1)	8(4)	[10]	X63395
A14	VI, St, md			[27]	X12688
A30	I, fl, pf, RTP			[12]	X72808
L14 (Q4)	I, St, pf, R	0	14(10)	[12]	X63392
L1 (HK137; Q14)	I, fl, pf, TP			[2]	J00248
L15 (HK134; Q13)	I, fl, pf	1	7(4)	[2]	K01323
L15a (HK101)	I, fl, pf	1	8(5)	[1]	V00558
L2 (Humkv328h5; Q11)	III, Hah, p, RT			[59]	M23090
L16 (Q10)	III, St, p, T	0	1	[12]	X72815
L16a (Humkv328h2)	III, Hah, pf	0	1	[59]	M23089
L16b (Humkv328)	III, Les, pf	0	1	[59]	M23088
L16c (Humkv329)	III, Les, md	0	3(2)	[59]	M23091
L3 (Q12)	II, Hah, ps			[12]	X72810
L17	II, St, ps	1	3	[12]	X72811
L4 (Va)	I, St, md			[60]	X00903
L18 (Va'')	I, St, md, T	0	1(1)	[61]	X17262
L4/18a (V4a)	I, fl, pf	0	2(2)	[60]	X00900
L5 (Vb)	I, St, pf, T			[60]	V01577
L19 (Vb'')	I, St, pf	0	1	[61]	X17263
L5/19a (V4b)	I, fl, pf	1	0	[60]	V01576
L6 (Vg)	III, St, pf, RT			[62]	X01668
L20 (Vg'')	III, St, pf, R	2(1)	4(3)	[61]	X17264
L6a (38K)	III, pf		0	[63]	
L7 (Vc)	II, St, ps			[60]	X00904
L21 (Vc'')	II, St, ps	0	8	[61]	X17265
L8 (Vd)	I, St, md, RT			[60]	X00902
L22	I, St, md	0	-	[12]	X72816
L23 (Q2)	I, GM607, pf			[12]	X72817
L23a	I, N, pf	0	0	[12]	X72818
L9 (Ve)	I, St, md, R			[60]	X00901
L24 (Ve''); Q3; V13)	I, St, pf, RT	1(1)	12(8)	[53]	X00750
L24a	I, N, pf	1(1)	12(8)	[12]	X72819
L10 (Vh)	III, St, md			[62]	X02725
L10a	III, N, md			[12]	X72812
L25 (V138; Q9)	III, St, pf	2(*)	9(5)	[12]	X72820
L11 (Vf)	I, St, pf, T			[25]	M64858
L12 (HK102, V1)	I, fl, pf			[1, 53]	V00559
L12a	I, ML, pf, RTP	-	5(1)	[12]	X72813
L13 (Q6)	II, N, md			[12]	X72814

Z Z

Z Z

Z Z

I I

I I

Z I

Z Z

I I I

I I

I I

I I

I I

Description <sup>a</sup>	Characteristics <sup>b</sup>	Divergence <sup>c</sup>		Described in	Accession <sup>d</sup> number
		L	V		
B1	VII, St, md			[13]	X12682
B2 (EV15)	V, P1, pf, RT			[64]	X02485
B3	IV, St, pf, RTP			[65]	Z00023
W1	II, St, ps			[66]	X05101
W1a	II, St, ps			[67]	X76074
W2	II, St, ps			[68]	X51884
W3	I, St, ps			[66]	X05102
W4	II, St, ps			[68]	X51883
W5	III, St, ps			[68]	X51882
W6	I, St, ps			[66]	X05103
W7	II, St, ps			[68]	X51881
W8	II, St, ps			[68]	X51880
W9	I, St, ps			[68]	X51879
W10	II, St, ps			[68]	X51886
W11	I, St, ps			[68]	X51885
Chr22-1	I, St, ps			[69]	Z00040
Chr22-2	III, St, ps			[69]	Z00042
Chr22-3	II, St, ps			[69]	Z00041
Chr22-4	II, St, ps			[70]	M20808
Chr22-5	I, St, ps			[53]	X00747
Chr22-5a (V2b)	I, fl, ps			[53]	X00746
Chr1	I, St, ps			[69]	M20809
Z1	I, St, ps			[71]	M23653
Z2	I, St, ps			[20]	X64640
Z3	I, St, ps			[20]	X64641
Z4	I, St, ps			[20]	X64642
V118	I, St, ps			[70]	M20812
V108	I, St, ps (pf)			[18]	X51887
V268	III, St, ps (pf)			[19]	X74459
V268a	III, St, ps (pf)			[19]	X74460

<sup>a</sup> In addition to the current designations previous and alternative ones are given in brackets. The Q/Y nomenclature was used in ref. [21]. Our "standard" alleles isolated from large contigs are named by straight numbers, e.g. L16; a, b, c is added to additional isolates, e.g. L16b. If an allele cannot be assigned to the proximal or distal copy of the  $\kappa$  locus, it receives a double designation, e.g. L5/19a. The C<sub>κ</sub> proximal gene of a pair of duplicates is always listed first.

<sup>b</sup> This column gives several features of the V<sub>κ</sub> genes: the subgroups (see text); sources of DNA; fl, fetal liver; St, N, different placenta DNA; GM607, DNA of a lymphoid cell line; the other source designations are taken from the respective references. pf, ps and md refer to potentially functional genes, pseudogenes and genes with minor defects, respectively (see text). The orphon genes V108, V268 and V268a are classified as pseudogenes although they have no obvious defects in their sequence. They are therefore designated ps (pf). R, T and P indicate that for the gene(s) a rearrangement product, a transcription product or a protein is known [16]. The designation is given to a gene pair if the expression product could not be assigned to the p or d copy. For the special situation in the leader of L25 (asterisk) see Fig. 4c and ref. [12].

<sup>c</sup> This column shows the numbers of nucleotides (amino acids in parentheses) in exons 1 and 2 which are divergent between duplicate genes. In the case of alleles the numbers are differences to the p copy genes.

<sup>d</sup> Accession numbers listed are for EMBL and GenBank data libraries.

### 3) V<sub>κ</sub> gene duplicates and the germ-line repertoire of V<sub>κ</sub> genes

The degree of divergence between duplicate V<sub>κ</sub> genes is shown in Table 1 for exons 1 and 2 and in Fig. 1 for

the total regions sequenced in both genes of a pair. The average extent of divergence is somewhat higher for pairs of pseudogenes than for pairs of potentially functional genes. In addition, the average divergence

seems to be lower in the O regions than in the A and L regions. Both features may be interpreted in terms of a surveillance mechanism which counteracts the mutational divergence. On the average, the p and d copy-derived sequences of gene regions (Fig. 1) differ by about 1% (404 of 38 136bp) indicating that the duplication is an evolutionarily, relatively recent event. 1% divergence is believed to correspond to  $10^6$  years of evolution<sup>[22]</sup>. But the differences in the extent of divergence of the various duplicated gene regions will thwart all attempts to date the duplication event exactly.

Because of the generally high similarity among the gene pairs the duplication of the  $\kappa$  locus has not (yet?) increased much the repertoire of different germ-line  $V_\kappa$  genes. Since in most, although not in all cases both genes of a pair belong to the same category being either potentially functional, slightly defective or pseudogenes, the selective advantage of the duplication in allowing the members of a pair to diverge from each other cannot be high. In general, the  $V_\kappa$  genes of the d copy are expressed to a lesser extent than the p copy genes, but there are unequivocal examples of expressed genes of the d copy<sup>[7,16,23]</sup>. One feature of the duplicated structure may become advantageous in cells that require a second  $V_\kappa$ - $J_\kappa$  rearrangement in order to arrive at a functional joint: since most  $V_\kappa$  genes of the p copy are rearranged by a deletion mechanism the inversional rearrangement of the d copy  $V_\kappa$  genes may be useful in preserving the  $V_\kappa$  gene repertoire<sup>[7,23]</sup>.

The existence of an apparently healthy individual who lacks the d copies of the  $\kappa$  locus in a homozygous fashion demonstrates that the d copy genes are dispensable<sup>[7,24]</sup>. The absence of one particular d copy gene (A2) in this individual is compensated by  $V_\kappa$  gene(s) of the p copy<sup>[25]</sup>. This may be true also for other d copy genes since no increase of  $\lambda$  chain-containing antibodies was found in the individual. In serological experiments, kindly performed by R. Linke, Munchen, the  $\kappa/\lambda$  chain ratio was determined to be about 60/40 in both the individual with only the p copies and individuals with p and d copies<sup>[26]</sup>.

#### 4) Comparison of $V_\kappa$ genes within subgroups and the derivation of PCR primers

The alignments of sequences of the subgroups I, II and III are shown in Fig. 2–4. Subgroups IV, V and VII consist of one germ-line  $V_\kappa$  gene each, and subgroup VI has three members, the sequences of which have been compared previously<sup>[10,27]</sup>. The sequence differences among members of the  $V_\kappa$  gene subgroups and between the subgroups are compiled in Table 2. Mat-

rices of gene-by-gene comparisons are included in ref.<sup>[26]</sup>. It can be seen in Table 2 that the genes of the  $V_{\kappa IV}$ – $V_{\kappa VII}$  genes constitute subgroups of their own, albeit single-member subgroups in three cases, and cannot be assigned to the predominant subgroups I–III. It is also confirmed that the  $V_\kappa$  gene subgroups I–IV correspond closely to the classical subgroups I–IV of  $\kappa$  proteins<sup>[28]</sup> (see below). The differences between the various  $V_\kappa$  gene subgroups are stressed by the comparison of some structural features of the gene regions in Table 3.

The alignments of the  $V_\kappa$  gene sequences of the major subgroups (Fig. 2–4) are an important source of information for all sorts of comparisons and classifications. The alignments also present a rational basis for the selection of PCR primer pairs. A number of primers has been suggested on the basis of the  $V_\kappa$  gene sequences available at the time<sup>[29–33]</sup>. The arrows in Fig. 2–4 and the comments in the respective legends should be taken as general suggestions. The specific primer sequences to be used depend on the particular experiment. On the 5' side the choice of primer depends on whether one wants to include the regulatory sequences, the leader region or only exon 2. On the 3' side one has the choice between the closer or more distant non-coding sequences. In rearranged  $V_\kappa$ - $J_\kappa$  genes,  $J_\kappa$  consensus or  $J_\kappa$ - $C_\kappa$  intron sequences are possible, while for cDNAs a part of the  $C_\kappa$  gene may be the sequence of choice. A main determinant in the choice of primers in PCR with genomic DNA is the desired specificity or generality. If one aims at amplifying one specific  $V_\kappa$  gene one may have to resort to using nested primer pairs (e.g.<sup>[12]</sup>). Primer pairs that are more or less specific for one of the  $V_\kappa$  gene subgroups can be constructed. Primer pairs or mixtures of different primer pairs for amplifying  $V_\kappa$  genes of all subgroups about equally well are difficult to envisage. The search for the desired primer pairs is facilitated for the reader by the presentation of separate consensus sequences of the potentially functional  $V_\kappa$  genes with and without inclusion of the slightly defective genes.

It was not feasible to include in the alignments the sequences of the 25 pseudogenes of the  $\kappa$  locus and of the 24 known orphons  $V_\kappa$  genes. But depending on the choice of the primer pair one has to expect to amplify in genomic PCR also some of those gene sequences. Another caveat one has to keep in mind for PCR with multigene families as the  $V_\kappa$  genes is the possibility of PCR artifacts. Structures that probably arose as PCR artifacts were described recently for amplification reactions with cDNA mixtures<sup>[16]</sup>, and they conceivably also occur in PCR with genomic DNA when primer pairs of low stringency are employed.

Table 2. Subgroup classification of the V<sub>κ</sub> genes of the human  $\kappa$  locus<sup>a</sup>.

	I	II	III	IV (B3)	V (B2)	VI (A10, A14 A26)	VII (B1)
	17, 6, 6 %	9, 5, 13 %	7, 1, 6 %	1, -, - %	1, -, - %	-, 3, - %	-, 1, - %
I							
L	87-100 (>67)						
V	88-100 (>71)						
II							
L	78-92 (>84)	92-100					
V	57-65 (>64)	84-100					
III							
L	68-78	59-67	96-100 (>74)				
V	72-78	66-71 (>68)	92-100				
IV							
L	54-60	55-59	55	100			
V	70-75	68-71	74-78	100			
V							
L	62-68	61-65	63-65	65	100		
V	61-66	57-61	61-65	63	100		
VI							
L	64-79	61-70	61-65	57-60	55-65	77-100	
V	71-73	63-68	70-74	69-70	63	87	
VII							
L	60-64	57-61	53-57	43	59	55-65	100
V	67-70	66-60	68-71	70	65	70-71	100

<sup>a</sup> The numbers underneath the subgroup numerals are the numbers of pf, md and ps genes in the subgroup. L and V refer to exons 1 and 2. The numbers in the Table are percent similarity of potentially functional genes within and between subgroups. The values for slightly defective genes and pseudogenes are given in parentheses.

Table 3. Features of promoter and intron regions of the V<sub>κ</sub> gene subgroups.

Subgroup	dc Region <sup>a</sup>		Intron	
	Length [bp]	Similarity <sup>b</sup> [%]	Length <sup>b</sup> [bp]	Similarity <sup>b,c</sup> [%]
I	96-97	81-100 (68-100)	124-126 (108-126)	69-100 (65-100)
II	108-126	83-100 (82-100)	370-440 (333-444)	-
III	103	90-100 (74-100)	170-190 (64-100)	80-100 (168-1446)
IV	103	-	219	-
V	112	-	145	-
VI	113-115	(80)	206-210	(70)
VII	243	-	107	-

<sup>a</sup> The region from the first nucleotide of dc to exon 1 is compared.

<sup>b</sup> Numbers in parentheses refer to pseudogenes.

<sup>c</sup> Because of the high variability of length no similarities were calculated for the introns of the V<sub>κ</sub>II-family.



### 5) Conserved sequence elements

One important outcome of the alignment exercise (Fig. 2-4) is the definition and evaluation of conserved sequence elements. A TATAA-like sequence is found 5' of all  $V_{\kappa}$  genes, but its exact sequence is rather variable. The decanucleotide (dc) sequence TNATTGTCAT was recognized early as a functionally important promoter element<sup>[34]</sup>; independently, the octanucleotide ATTTGTCAT was defined as a conserved sequence<sup>[35]</sup>. The occurrence of the deca- resp. octanucleotide sequence in various gene systems was reviewed<sup>[36-38]</sup>. In transcription assays the last seven nucleotides of dc appeared to be essential for promoter activity, while alterations in the first and third position of dc allowed reduced transcription<sup>[39]</sup>. Consequently, deviations from the heptanucleotide TTTGTCAT are considered a defect in a  $V_{\kappa}$  gene. The first three nucleotides of dc seem to be predominantly TGA, TGC or GGA (Fig. 2b, 3b, 4b).

The 15-mer or pd element as defined in ref.<sup>[34]</sup> is found 17 bp 5' of dc in all  $V_{\kappa}$  genes and approximately 150 bp 5' of dc in A10 and A26, while it is not seen in  $V_{\kappa}$  genes of other subgroups (Fig. 2a, 3a, 4a). pd is not a promoter element essential for transcription<sup>[40]</sup> but it may have a supportive activity<sup>[41]</sup>. Another possibly supportive element is CCCT<sup>[41]</sup> which is found in one or more copies 20-30 bp 3' of dc in almost all potentially functional  $V_{\kappa}$  genes (Fig. 2b, 3b, 4b). An ACCC element, which was found to bind nuclear protein(s)<sup>[42]</sup>, is less well conserved but is found in many potentially functional  $V_{\kappa}$  genes on the 5' or 3' side of dc, in some genes overlapping with the CCCT element. Several sequence motives that have been defined as potential binding sites for transcription factors (review<sup>[43]</sup>) were found in the sequences by a computer-aided search<sup>[44]</sup>; they are shown in Fig. 2a and b, 3b, 4b, but appear not to be highly conserved in  $V_{\kappa}$  genes. In summary, the heptanucleotide part of dc, the TATAA element and the C-rich sequences are highly conserved. pd and other sequences upstream or downstream of dc may help to increase transcriptional activity.

Sequence regularities in the leader and in exon 2 will be discussed on the protein level (see below). Some of the conserved regions in the intron (Fig. 2d, 3d, 4d) are related to functions in the splice process. A remarkable feature are the relatively narrow distribution of intron sizes within the major  $V_{\kappa}$  gene subgroups and the pronounced differences in this respect between the subgroups (Table 3).

The recombination signal sequences are well conserved in the potentially functional  $V_{\kappa}$  genes of the major subgroups (Fig. 2f, 3f, 4f). The heptamer

agrees fully and the nonamer to a large extent with the canonical sequences. This is so since by our formal definition a deviation from the canonical heptamer sequence is considered a defect that places an otherwise potentially functional gene in the category of genes with minor defects. This does not exclude that such genes do rearrange<sup>[16]</sup>, which is in agreement with the finding that slightly altered recognition sites in a model system lead to a reduced recombination frequency but do not abolish recombination<sup>[45]</sup>. Considering mechanistic aspects of  $V_{\kappa}$ - $J_{\kappa}$  rearrangements one should keep in mind that in all but very few potentially functional and slightly defective  $V_{\kappa}$  genes the last codon of exon 2 is a Pro codon; it is always the codon CCT, and even in the few non-Pro codons the last nucleotide is a T. The first nucleotides beyond this codon are, in most genes, C residues. It is an open question whether these nucleotides are recognized by the  $V_{\kappa}$ - $J_{\kappa}$  recombination machinery.

### 6) Subgroups of $\kappa$ proteins and the invariant residues in the sequences

It has proven very useful to order immunoglobulins into sets of related sequences which in the case of the human  $\kappa$  chains are called subgroups. Since the early studies of Milstein<sup>[46]</sup>, Hilschmann<sup>[47]</sup> and others the subgroup classification has become, mainly by the monumental work of Kabat et al. (ref.<sup>[28]</sup> and earlier editions) a guiding principle of structural immunology. For subgroups I-IV the classification was fully confirmed when the  $V_{\kappa}$  gene sequences became known. For five germ-line genes that did not fit into these subgroups the new subgroups V-VII were defined. Transcripts of  $V_{\kappa}$ V and VI genes have been found<sup>[32]</sup>. Since no proteins are known that are derived from the  $V_{\kappa}$ V-VII genes it may be argued that the one-member families V and VII and the three-member family VI are not subgroups in the sense of the classical definition<sup>[28]</sup>. But a rigid distinction between sequence families of genes and subgroups of proteins becomes cumbersome, for instance when  $V_{\kappa}$  gene and protein sequences are compared across species boundaries. An example are the correlations between certain groups of human and murine  $V_{\kappa}$  genes (exon 2<sup>[48]</sup>; introns<sup>[26]</sup>) which are interesting for the consideration of the evolution of the  $\kappa$  locus. It, therefore, appears to be justified to use the subgroup classification also for sequences that are known only at the nucleic acid level.

The formal translation products of the germ-line  $V_{\kappa}$ I-III genes were aligned and are presented in Fig. 5a-c. Sequences derived from potentially functional and slightly defective genes are grouped sepa-

rately. It is not surprising that most residues defined as invariant (i.e. 95% and more conserved within a subgroup) in the collection of protein, cDNA and gene sequence<sup>[28]</sup> are also found here to be conserved. The relatively high homogeneity of sequences within the subgroups is interesting because of the just mentioned relation between sets of human and mouse genes. Apparently, some subgroup-specific features of V<sub>κ</sub> genes have been conserved in evolution for a long time and divergence is counteracted in the species by surveillance mechanisms.

The presentation of the residues conserved among all potentially functional V<sub>κ</sub>I–IV genes (Fig. 5d) emphasizes the residues that are particularly important for the structure and/or function of the  $\kappa$  chains. Such highly conserved residues are seen all along the sequences and in a cluster at the beginning of FR3. They have to be considered with particular attention in all attempts of antibody gene engineering. The cluster of conserved residues in FR3 may play a role in the intracellular transport and secretion of the protein, as indicated by experiments with mouse  $\lambda$  chains<sup>[49]</sup>. Its importance is also seen from the fact that it is not only conserved between the  $\kappa$  subgroups and between  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  chains but also in several mammalian species. The same is true for the four residues shown with double underlining in Fig. 5d. Their conservation is illustrated by the numbers of light chains in which they do or do not occur: Cys 23, 1450/3; Trp 35, 1242/3; Gly 57, 1133/12; Cys 88, 1134/1. The numbers are derived from the sequence collection of Kabat et al.<sup>[28]</sup>

The leader sequence that functions in intracellular transport and/or secretion of the proteins is highly conserved within the subgroups, while between subgroups only some hydrophobic residues in the 3' part of the leader sequence are kept invariant.

#### 7) Some aspects of the evolution of the human $\kappa$ locus

To discuss evolution is one of the attractions of studying a multigene family like the V<sub>κ</sub> genes. Such discussions play a role in many reports from other laboratories (e.g.<sup>[2,28,33]</sup>) and from our laboratory. Some of our earlier findings were discussed in the context of evolution in a review article<sup>[50]</sup>, for instance the duplication of the locus, the interdigitation of genes of different subgroups and the relationship between orphans and V<sub>κ</sub> genes of the locus. While the evolution of most pseudogenes and orphans is dwelled on in another report<sup>[17]</sup> we like to enumerate here some of the reactions or mechanisms that must have operated in shaping the present-day  $\kappa$  locus; we will then turn

to the discussion of sequence similarities between V<sub>κ</sub> genes and groups of such genes.

After duplication, interdigitation, conservation of invariant residues and generation of orphans the point mutations should be mentioned next. The average divergence of about 1% between the p and d copies which has been mentioned in section 3 is largely due to point mutations. Not surprisingly, there are about twice as many transitions than transversions, and no indication for a pronounced selection was detected<sup>[26]</sup>. Stop codons have been created in the locus 18 times, some of them in genes which are pseudogenes also on other accounts. The insertion of a single G residue in exon 2 of the gene A4 led to a debilitating frame shift<sup>[10]</sup>. Clear examples of gene conversion were observed between some genes of the L region<sup>[2,12]</sup> and indications of information transfer are also seen in other regions of the locus. Deletions of gene-containing stretches of DNA could well be defined in cases where they occurred only in one of the copies of the locus<sup>[10]</sup>, or in both copies but with different breakpoints of homology<sup>[11]</sup>. Insertions of repetitive elements occurred both before and, as in the case of one particular Alu element<sup>[10]</sup>, after the duplication.

The similarities between the V<sub>κ</sub> genes of subgroup I are particularly high in the L regions, in part certainly because of the just mentioned gene conversions. The homologies extend far into the downstream region to a particular structural element, the so-called L element<sup>[51]</sup>, which is found only in this group of V<sub>κ</sub>I genes and in the orphon V<sub>κ</sub>I gene V108<sup>[18]</sup>. The V<sub>κ</sub>I genes of the O regions seem to form, together with some orphon V<sub>κ</sub>I genes, a group of their own. The V<sub>κ</sub> genes of subgroup II are less similar to each other than the ones of other subgroups. Also here the L region and the O region plus some orphon V<sub>κ</sub>II genes form groups of their own. The V<sub>κ</sub>III genes again constitute a somewhat more homogeneous group with the possibility to define more closely related subsets in the L, A, and O regions. The relationships between the genes of the three main subgroups are discussed in some detail in ref.<sup>[26]</sup>. Relationship diagrams, which can be drawn in all cases, have to be taken with a grain or even a kilogram of salt if it comes to equating them with evolutionary trees, not the least because of gene conversion and possible other surveillance mechanisms. The same is true for the ur-V<sub>κ</sub> gene and the ur-V<sub>κ</sub>I–IV (or I–VII) V<sub>κ</sub> genes which one somehow has to postulate. The comparison of human and mouse V<sub>κ</sub> gene sequences indicates that, at least in some cases, subgroup formation has predated speciation<sup>[26,48]</sup>. The evolution of the human  $\kappa$  locus will become better understandable once the  $\kappa$  loci of primate(s) and other mammals are known.

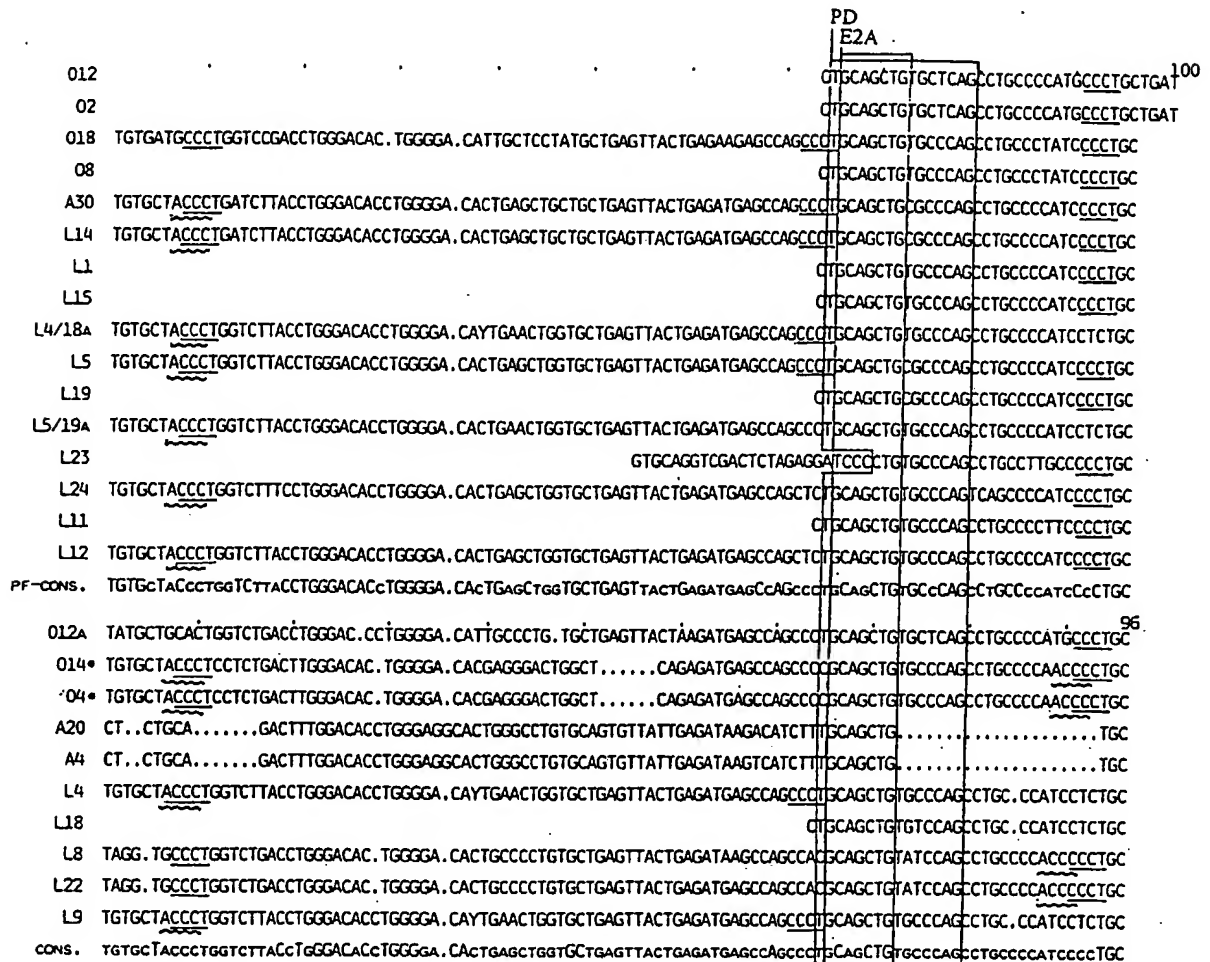


Fig. 2a

Fig. 2. Alignment of the gene regions of the potentially functional (pf) and slightly defective (md)  $V_{\alpha}$  genes of subgroup I.

For the boxed and underlined elements see text. Alleles of genes are shown only if they differ from their respective standard gene. The upper blocks of sequences show all pf genes and the lower one the genes with minor defects. Consensus sequences are given for the pf genes (pf-cons.) and for pf plus md genes together (cons.). Lower case letters are used for nucleotides occurring in more than 50% of the positions. A dash indicates that no nucleotide occurs in more than 50% of the sequences at the position. Dotted lines indicate gaps found in the sequences. Gene sequences having no obvious defects at the nucleotide level, but showing exchanges of invariant amino acids are placed with the md genes. They are marked by an asterisk.

- Approximately 100bp upstream of the dc box are shown. The pd box would be suitable as part of a largely  $V_{\alpha}$ -specific primer.
- The 100bp upstream of the leader sequence are shown. For the boxed and underlined elements see text. L9 is considered to be a gene with "minor" defects because of a deletion in the dc box and an altered first ATG in exon 1. The arrow designates one of the possible  $V_{\alpha}$ -specific primers.
- Exon 1. The 5' part of the arrow may yield a largely  $V_{\alpha}$ I- plus  $V_{\alpha}$ II-specific primer while the 3' part seems to be more or less  $V_{\alpha}$ I- plus  $V_{\alpha}$ III-specific.
- Intron sequences. The possible primer may have a limited subgroup specificity.
- Exon 2. In the framework regions several primers are conceivable.
- Where known, the first 100bp downstream of exon 2 are shown. The hepta- and nonanucleotide recognition sites are underlined. It may be difficult, because of these sites, to construct subgroup-specific primers.

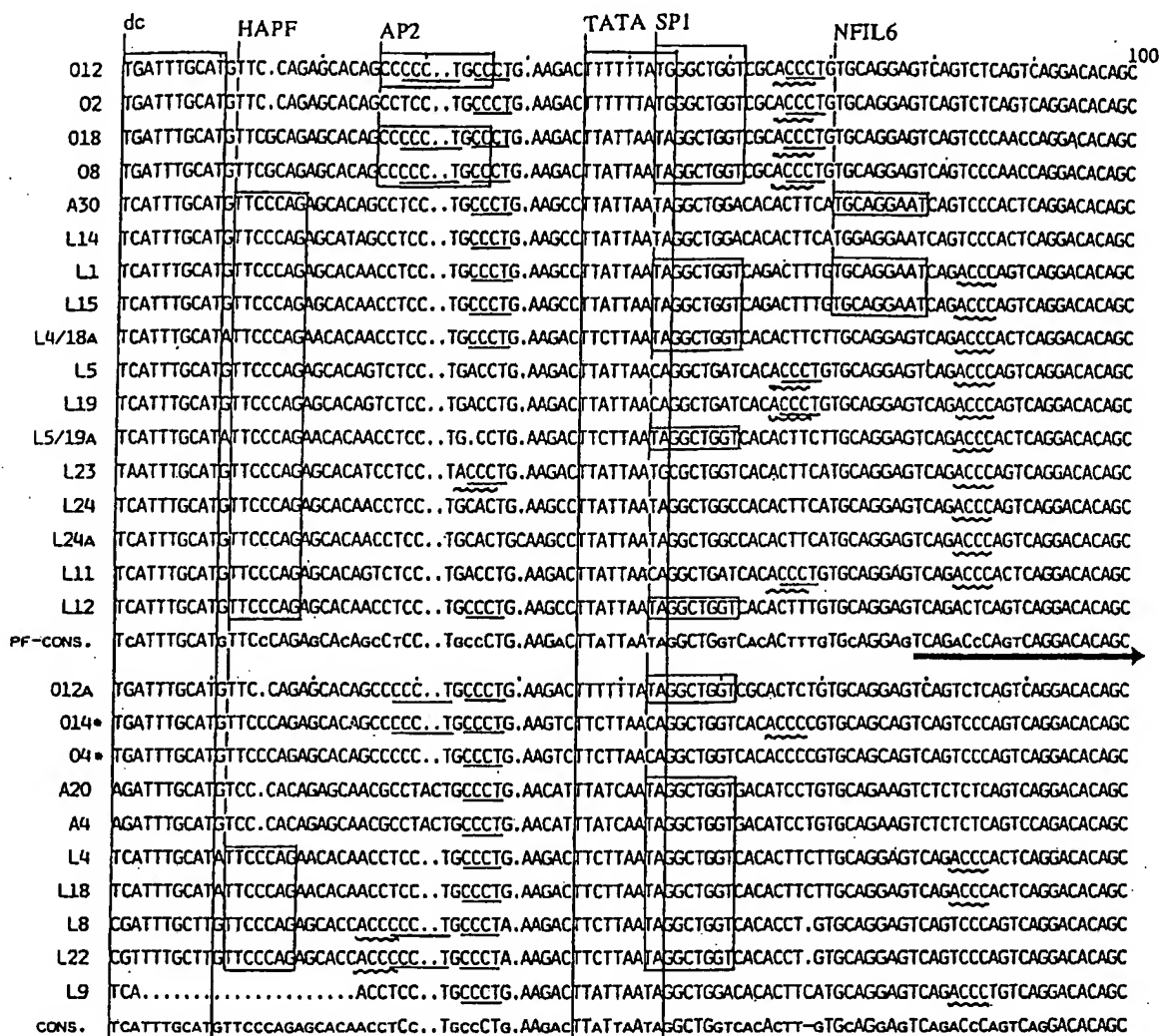
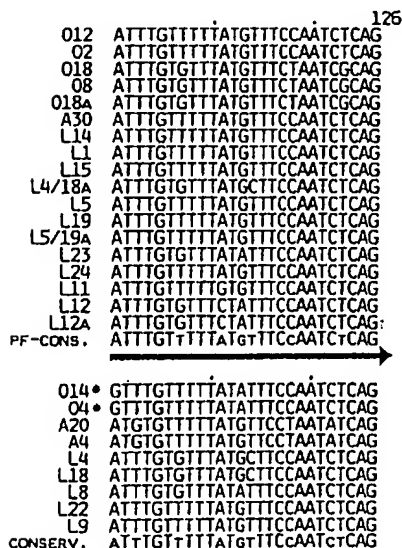


Fig. 2b



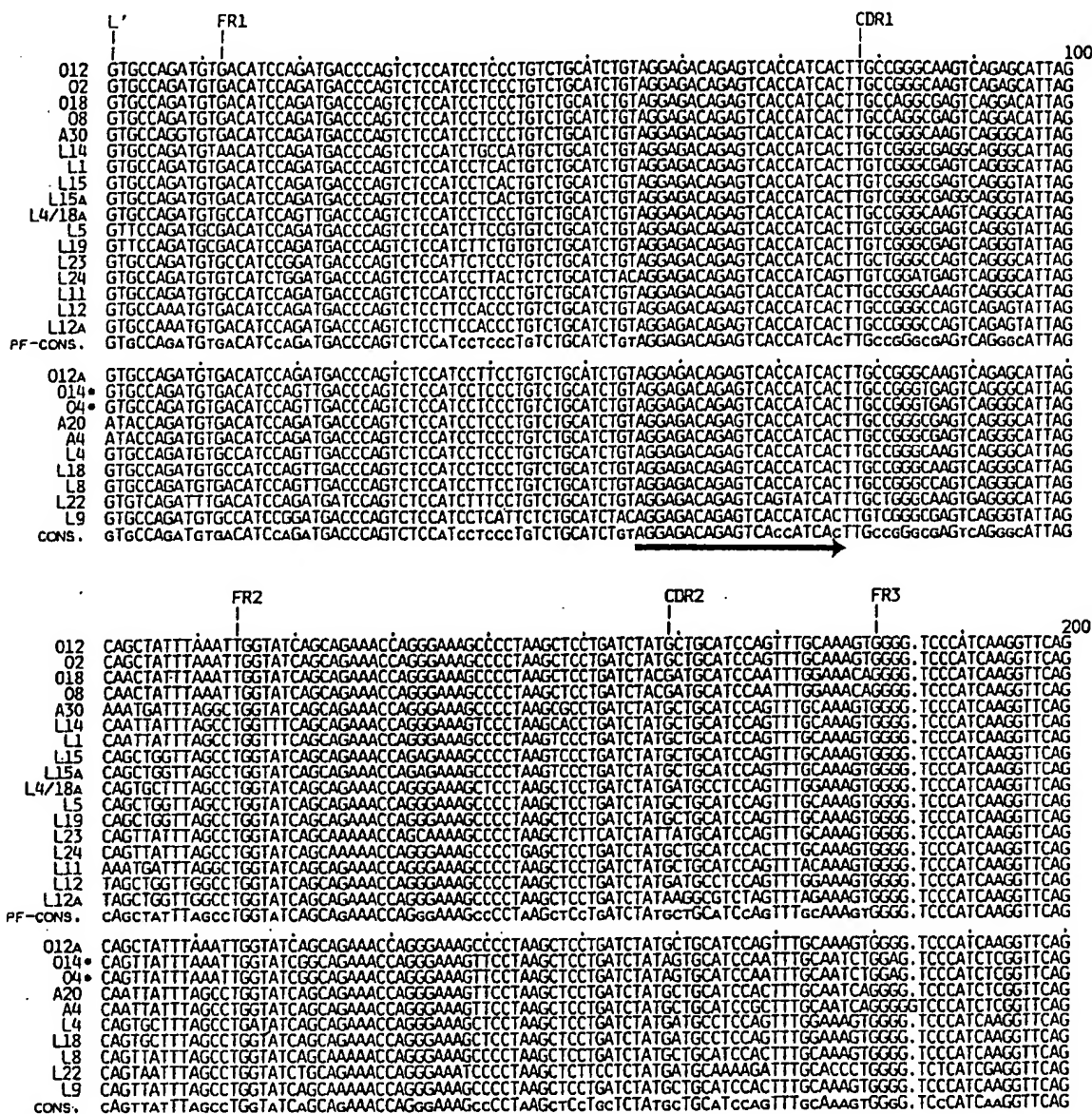


Fig. 2e

**Fig. 2e Continued**

**Fig. 2f**



011 CTTTTCACACCACTGCACCCACCAGG<sup>27</sup>  
 01 CTTTTCACACCACTGCACCCACCAGG  
 A17 TCTTTCACACCACTGCACCCACCAGG  
 A1 TCTTTCACACCACTGCACCCACCAGG  
 A2 TCTTTCACACCACTGCACCCACCAGG  
 A19 TCTTTCACACCACTGCACCCACCAGG  
 A3 TCTTTCACACCACTGCACCCACCAGG  
 A23 TATTCTACACCACTGCACCCACCAGG  
 PF-CONS. TCTTTCACACCACTGCACCCACCAGG  
  
 A18 TCTTTCACACCACTGCACCCACCAGG  
 A7• TATTCTATACCACTGCACCCACCAGG  
 A21 GCTTAGCAT...CACTGAC...CACCGGG  
 A29 TCTTTCACACCACTGCACCCACCAGG  
 A13 TCTTTCACACCACTGCACCCACCAGG  
 L13 TATTCTTCACTGCTTCACTACCAGG  
 CONS. TCTTTCACACCACTGCACCCACCAGG

Fig. 3a

Fig. 3. Alignment of the sequences of the V<sub>H</sub>II gene regions.

The presentation is analogous to Fig. 2.

- The conserved part of the region upstream of dc. Due to many insertions and deletions sequences further upstream are difficult to align. The last nucleotides of this region can be used together with the dc box to construct a primer with V<sub>H</sub>II plus V<sub>H</sub>III preference.
- Sequences upstream of the leader region. One possible primer is shown.
- Exon 1. For a possible primer sequence see Fig. 2c.
- 5' and 3' parts of the introns. Since the large middle section of the introns is rather divergent an alignment seems not to be meaningful. For a possible primer sequence see Fig. 2d.
- Exon 2. For primers see Fig. 2e.
- Where known, the first 100 bp downstream of exon 2 are shown. The hepta- and nonanucleotide recognition sites are underlined. For primers see Fig. 2f.

dc AP2 GATA1 TATA E2A  
 011 TGATTGCAATTGTCCTTACGGTGGACCTTCCCTTGTGAGTCTGAGATAAAGCTCAGCTCTATC.CTTGCCCTTGACTGATCAGGACTCCTCAGTTCACCTTCTCACC<sup>113</sup>  
 01 TGATTGCAATTGTCCTTACGGTGGACCTTCCCTTGTGAGTCTGAGATAAAGCTCAGCTCTATC.CTTGCCCTTGACTGATCAGGACTCCTCAGTTCACCTTCTCACC  
 A17 TGATTGCAATTATCCCTTAGTGAAGAC...TTTCCTTGTGAGTCTGAGATAAAGCTCAGCTCTATC.CTTGCCCTTGACTGATCAGGACTCCTCAGTTCACCTTCTCACA  
 A1 TGATTGCAATTATCCCTTAGTGAAGAC...TTTCCTTGTGAGTCTGAGATAAAGCTCAGCTCTATC.CTTGCCCTTGACTGATCAGGACTCCTCAGTTCACCTTCTCACA  
 A2 TGATTGCAATTGTCCTTACGGGAGGACC...TTCCCTTGTGAGTCTGAGATAAAGCTCAGCTCTAAC.CTTGCCCTTGACTGATCAGGACTCCTCAGTTCATCTTCTCACC  
 A19 GGATTGCAATTGTCCTTACGGGAGGACC...TTCCCTTGTGAGTCTGAGATAAAGCTCAGCTCTAAC.TGTGCCCTTGACTGATCAGGACTCCTCAGTTCACCTTCTCACA  
 A3 GGATTGCAATTGTCCTTACGGGAGGACC...TTCCCTTGTGAGTCTGAGATAAAGCTCAGCTCTAAC.TGTGCCCTTGACTGATCAGGACTCCTCAGTTCACCTTCTCACA  
 A23 GGATTGCAATTGTCCTTACGGGAGGACC...TTCCCTTGTGAGTCTGAGATAAAGCTCAGCTCTAAC.CTTGCCCTTGACTGATCAGGACTCCTCAGTTCACCTTCTCACA  
 PF-CONS. TGATTGCAATTGTCCTTACGGGAGGACC...TTCCTTGTGAGTCTGAGATAAAGCTCAGCTCTAAC.CTTGCCCTTGACTGATCAGGACTCCTCAGTTCACCTTCTCACA  
 A18 TGATTGCAATTGTCCTTACGGGAGGACC...TTCCCTTGTGAGTCTGAGATAAAGCTCAGCTCTAAC.CTTGCCCTTGACTGATCAGGACTCCTCAGTTCATCTTCTCACC  
 A21 GGATTGCAATTGTCCTTACGGGAGGACC...TTCCCTTGTGAGTCTGAGATAAAGCTCAGCTCTAAC.CTTGCCCTTGACTGATCAGGACTCCTCAGTTCACCTTCTCACT  
 A7• GGATTGCAATTGTCCTTACGGGAGGACC...TTCCCTTGTGAGTCTGAGATAAAGCTCAGCTCTAAC.CTTGCCCTTGACTGATCAGGACTCCTCAGTTCACCTTCTCACA  
 A29 GGATTGCAATTGTCCTTACGGGAGGACC...TTCCCTTGTGAGTCTGAGATAAAGCTCAGCTCTAAC.CTTGCCCTTGACTGATCAGGACTCCTCAGTTCACCTTCTCACA  
 A13 GGATTGCAATTGTCCTTACGGGAGGACC...TTCCCTTGTGAGTCTGAGATAAAGCTCAGCTCTAAC.CTTGCCCTTGACTGATCAGGACTCCTCAGTTCACCTTCTCACA  
 L13 GGATTGCAATTGTCCTTACGGGAGGACC...TTCCCTTGTGAGTCTGAGATAAAGCTCAGCTCTAAC.CTTGCCCTTGACTGATCAGGACTCCTCAGTTCACCTTCTCACA  
 CONS. GGATTGCAATTGTCCTTACGGGAGGACC...TTCCTTGTGAGTCTGAGATAAAGCTCAGCTCTAAC.CTTGCCCTTGACTGATCAGGACTCCTCAGTTCACCTTCTCACA

Fig. 3b

L  
 011 ATGAGGCTCCCTGCTCAGCTCCTGGGGCTGCTAATGCTCTGGGTCCCTG<sup>49</sup>  
 01 ATGAGGCTCCCTGCTCAGCTCCTGGGGCTGCTAATGCTCTGGGTCCCTG  
 A17 ATGAGGCTCCCTGCTCAGCTCCTGGGGCTGCTAATGCTCTGGGTCCCTG  
 A1 ATGAGGCTCCCTGCTCAGCTCCTGGGGCTGCTAATGCTCTGGGTCCCTG  
 A2 ATGAGGCTCCCTGCTCAGCTCCTGGGGCTGCTAATGCTCTGGGTCCCTG  
 A19 ATGAGGCTCCCTGCTCAGCTCCTGGGGCTGCTAATGCTCTGGGTCCCTG  
 A3 ATGAGGCTCCCTGCTCAGCTCCTGGGGCTGCTAATGCTCTGGGTCCCTG  
 A23 ATGAGGCTCCCTGCTCAGCTCCTGGGGCTGCTAATGCTCTGGGTCCCTG  
 PF-CONS. ATGAGGCTCCCTGCTCAGCTCCTGGGGCTGCTAATGCTCTGGGTCCCTG  
 A18 ATGAGGCTCCCTGCTCAGCTCCTGGGGCTGCTAATGCTCTGGGTCCCTG  
 A21 ATGAGGCTCCCTGCTCAGCTCCTGGGGCTGCTAATGCTCTGGGTCCCTG  
 A7• ATGAGGCTCCCTGCTCAGCTCCTGGGGCTGCTAATGCTCTGGGTCCCTG  
 A29 ATGAGGCTCCCTGCTCAGCTCCTGGGGCTGCTAATGCTCTGGGTCCCTG  
 A13 ATGAGGCTCCCTGCTCAGCTCCTGGGGCTGCTAATGCTCTGGGTCCCTG  
 L13 ATGAGGCTCCCTGCTCAGCTCCTGGGGCTGCTAATGCTCTGGGTCCCTG  
 CONS. ATGAGGCTCCCTGCTCAGCTCCTGGGGCTGCTAATGCTCTGGGTCCCTG

Fig. 3c



Fig. 3e

011 TCCACAGTGGTACAGCCCTGAACAGAAACCTCCCTGCTGT. GGTGCCCCAGCTGCTCACATGCACTGCTTGTCTGGGAGCAGGTGAGCAGCGTCTCTGA<sup>100</sup>  
 01 TCCACAGTGGTACAGCCCTGAACAGAAACCTCCCTGCTGT. GGTGCCCCAGCTGCTCACATGCACTGCTTGTCTGGGAGCAGGTGAGCAGCGTCTCTGA  
 A17 CCCACAGTGGTACAGCCCTGAACAGAAACCTCCCTG. TGG. AGTGGCCAGCTGCCACATGTGCTTGTCTGGGAGCAGGTGAGCAGCGTCTCTGA  
 A1 CCCACAGTGGTACAGCCCTGAACAGAAACCTCCCTG. TGG. GGTGCCCCAGCTGCCACATGTGCTTGTCTGGGAGCAGGTGAGCAGCGTCTCTGA  
 A2 CCCACAGTGGTACAGCCCTGAACAGAAACCTCCCTGCTGG. GGTGCCCCAGCTGCCACATGTGCTTGTCTGGGAGCAGGTGAGCAGCGTCTCTGA  
 A19 CCCACAGTGGTACAGCCCTGAACAGAAACCTCC. TCTGG. GGTGCCCCAGCTGCCACATGTGCTTGTCTGGGAGCAGGTGAGCAGCGTCTCTGA  
 A3 CCCACAGTGGTACAGCCCTGAACAGAAACCTCC. TCTGG. GGTGCCCCAGCTGCCACATGTGCTTGTCTGGGAGCAGGTGAGCAGCGTCTCTGA  
 A23 CACACAGTGGTACAGCTCTGAACAGAAACCTCC. CGCTGG. AGTGGCCAGCGGCG  
 PF-CONS. ccCACAGTGGTACAGCCCTGAACAGAAACCTCCCTGCTGG. GGTGCCCCAGCTGCTCACATGTGCTTGTCTGGGAGCAGGTGAGCAGCGTCTCTGA  
 011A TCCACAGTGGTACAGCCCTGAACAGAAACCTCCCTGCTGT. GGTGCCCCAGCTGCTCACATGCACTGCTTGTCTGGGAGCAGGTGAGCAGCATCTCTCA  
 A18 CCCACAGTGGTACAGCCCTGAACAGAAACCTCCCTGCTGG. GGTGCCCCAGCTGCTCACATGCACTGCTTGTCTGGGAGTAGCTCAGCAGCGTCTCTGA  
 A21 CCCACAGTGGTACAGCCCTGAGCAGAAACCTCTCTGCTTGAAGTGGCCAGCTGCTCACATGTGCTTGTCTGGGAGCAGCAGCAGGTTCTCTGA  
 A7 CACACAGTGGTACAGCCCTGAACAGAAACCTCC. CGCTGG. AGTGGCCAGCTGCTCAAGTGTGTTGTTCTC  
 A29 AACACAGTGGTACAGCCCTGAACAGAAACCTCCCTTCTGCTGTGGTTGCTGAGTGGCCAAATGTGTTGTTATCTGGAAGCAG  
 A13 AACACAGTGGTACAGCCCTGAACAGAAACCTCCCTTCTGCTGTGGTTGCTGAGTGGCCAAATG  
 L13 CACACAGTGGTAAACCTGAACAGAAACCTCCCTACTTGGGATGGCCAGCCATCCCAAGTGT  
 CONS. ccCACAGTGGTACAGCCCTGAACAGAAACCTCCCTGCTGG. GGTGCCCCAGCTGCTCACATGTGCTTGTCTGGGAGCAGGTGAGCAGCGTCTCTGA

Fig. 3f

A27A GATCACCTGGGCA...TGGGCTGCTGAGAGCAGAAAGG. GGAAGCAGATTGCTCTGCACTGCAAGCCAGCAGCCGCC...CCAGC<sup>84</sup>  
 A11A GATCACCTGGGCA...TGGGCTGCTGAGTGCAGAGAGG. GGAAGCAGATTGCTCTGCACTGCAAGCCAGCAGCCGCCGCCGCCAGC  
 L2 GACAACCAAGGCGCGCAGGATGCTCAGTGCAGAGAGGAAGAAGCAGGTGGTCTTTGCACTGGAAGCTCAGCTCCACC...CCAGC  
 L16A GACAACCAAGGCGCGCAGGATGCTCAGTGCAGAGAGGAAGAAGCAGGTGGTCTTTGCACTGGAAGCTCAGCTCCACC...CCAGC  
 L6 CTGCAGCTGGAAGCTCAGCTCCACC...CAGC  
 L25 GACAACCAAGGTGGCGCAGGATGCTCAGTGCAGAGAGGAA...GCAGGTGGTATCTGCAGCTGGAAGCCAGCTCCACC...CCAGC  
 PF-CONS. GACAACCAAGGCGCGCAGGATGCTCAGTGCAGAGAGGAAGA. GCAGGTGGTATCTGCAGCTGGAAGC-CAGCTCCACC...CCAGC  
 L10 CTGCAGCTGGAAGCTCAGCTCCACC...CAGC  
 CONS. GACAACCAAGGCGCGCAGGATGCTCAGTGCAGAGAGGAAGA. GCAGGTGGTATCTGCAGCTGGAAGCTCAGCTCCACC...CCAGC

Fig. 4a

Fig. 4. Alignment of the sequences of V<sub>H</sub>III gene regions.

The presentation is analogous to Fig. 2.

- Sequences upstream of the dc box. For a possible primer see Fig. 3a.
- Sequences upstream of the leader region. One possible primer is shown.
- The exon 1 sequences are shown together with 8bp of upstream sequence in order to include the alternative start codon of L25<sup>[12]</sup>. For a possible primer see Fig. 2c.
- Intron. For the possible primer see Fig. 2d.
- Exon 2. For possible primers see Fig. 2e.
- 100bp downstream of exon 2. For primers see Fig. 2f.

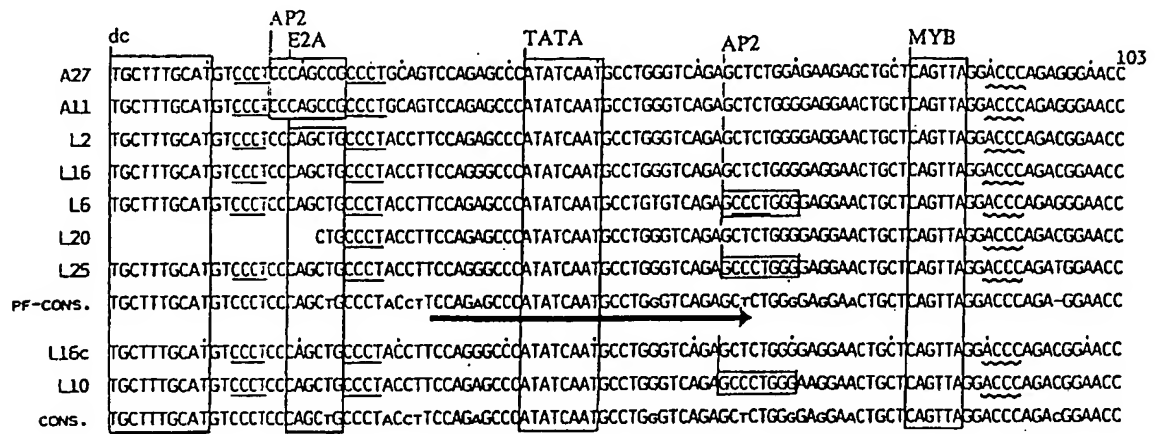


Fig. 4b

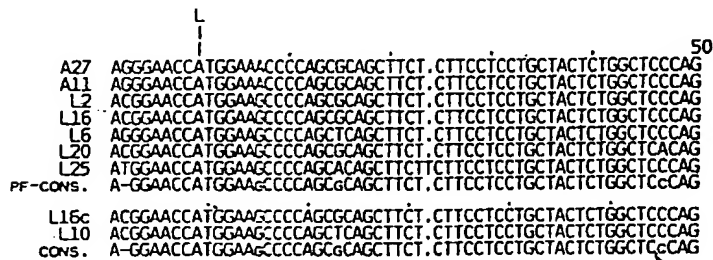


Fig. 4c

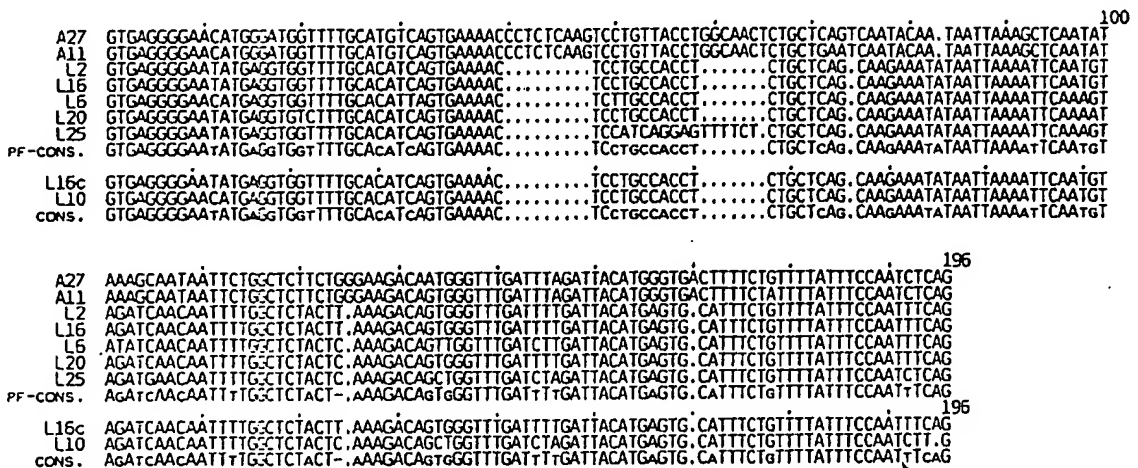


Fig. 4d

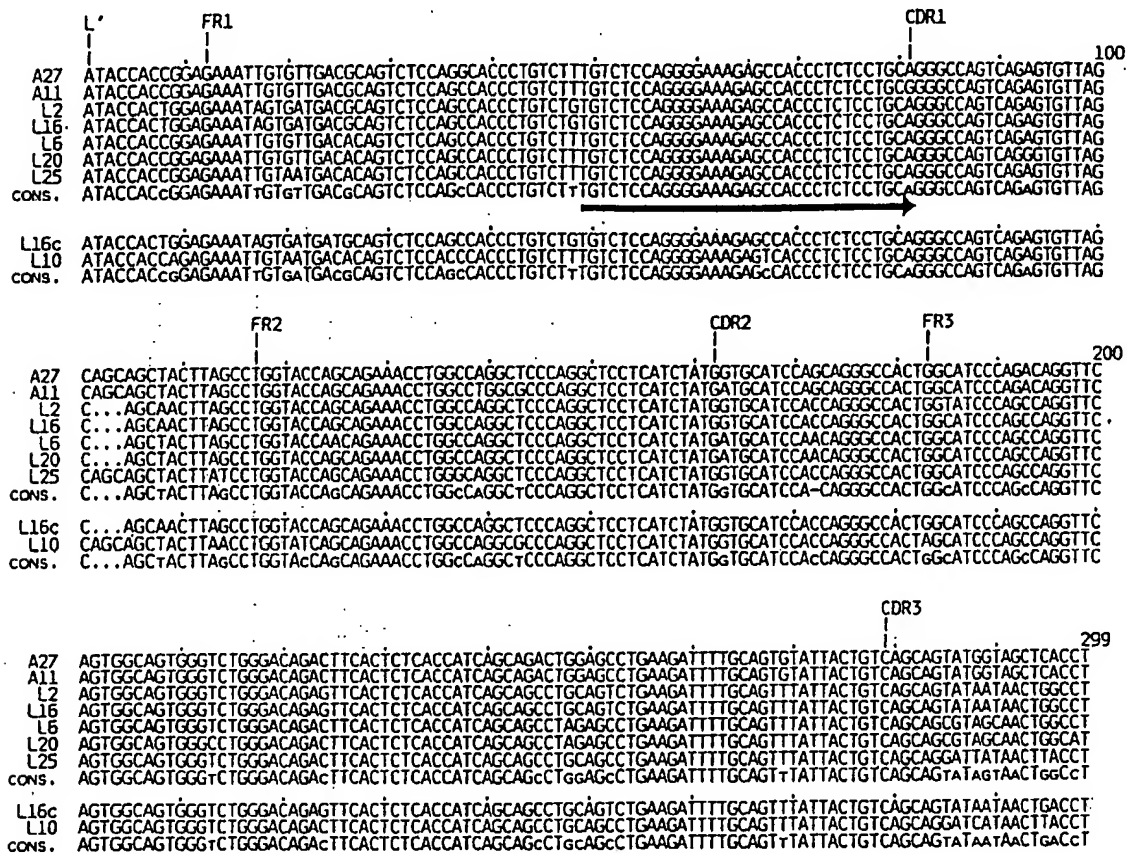


Fig. 4e

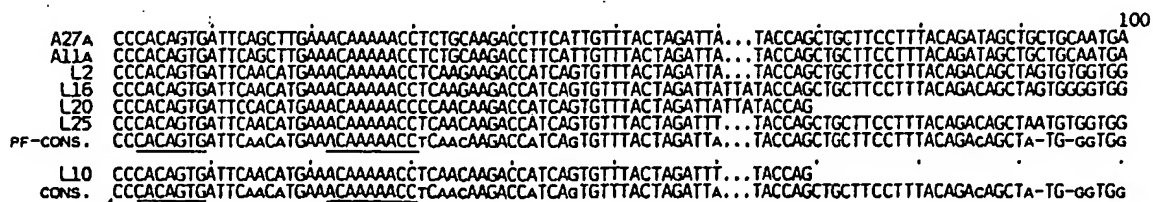


Fig. 4f

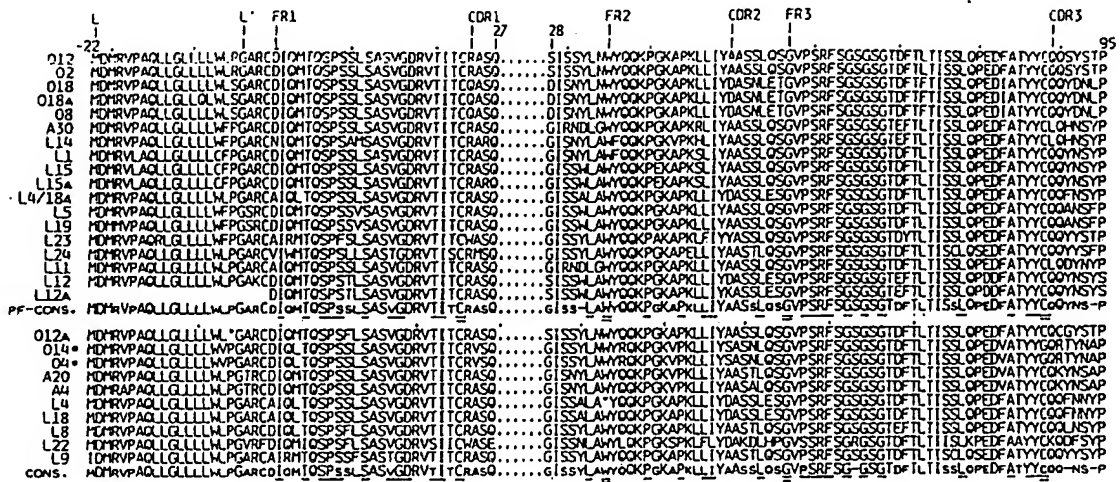


Fig. 5a

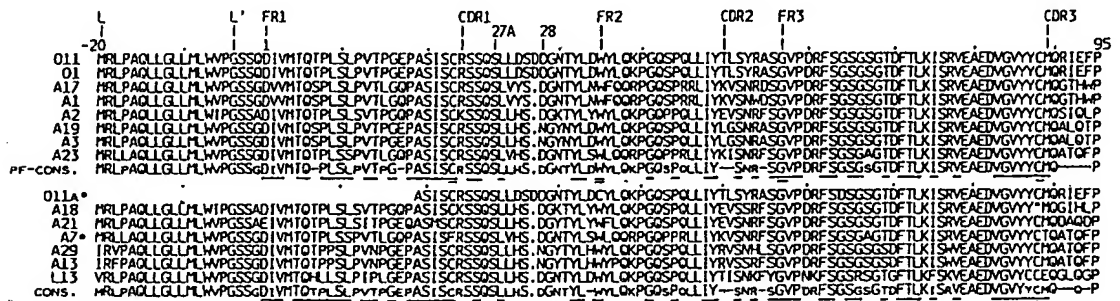


Fig. 5b

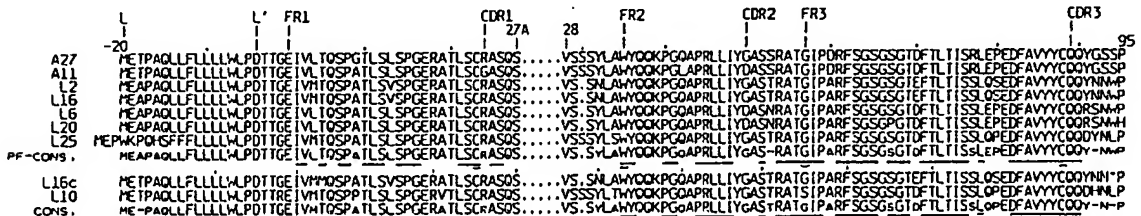


Fig. 5c

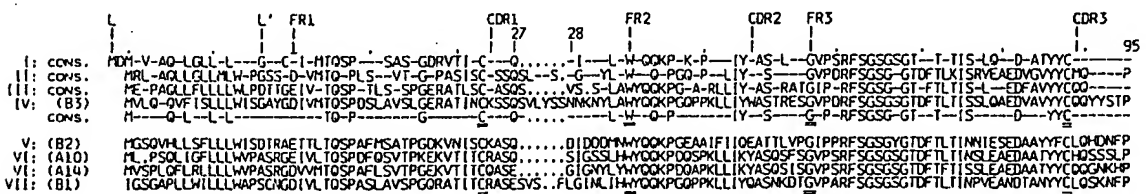


Fig. 5d

Fig. 5. Alignment of the formal translation products of the potentially functional and slightly defective  $V_{\alpha}$  genes of subgroups I–III (a–c).

The numbering of the residues and the definition of invariant residues (underlined) are as in ref. [28]. The four highly conserved residues (see text) are underlined twice. In panel (d) the residues conserved in the sequences of the formal translation products of subgroup I–IV genes are shown.

The work was supported throughout by the *Bundesministerium für Forschung und Technologie* (Center Grant 0316200A) and the *Fonds der Chemischen Industrie*.

# References

- 1 Bentley, D.L. & Rabbitts, T.H. (1980) *Nature (London)* **288**, 730–733.
- 2 Bentley, D.L. & Rabbitts, T.H. (1983) *Cell* **32**, 181–189.
- 3 Zachau, H.G., Pech, M., Klobeck, H.-G., Pohlenz, H.-D., Straubinger, B. & Falkner, F.G. (1984) *Hoppe-Seyler's Z. Physiol. Chem.* **365**, 1363–1373.
- 4 Zachau, H.G. (1989) in *The Immunoglobulin Genes* (Honjo, T., Alt, F.W. & Rabbitts, T.H. eds.) pp. 91–109, Academic Press, London/San Diego.
- 5 Zachau, H.G. (1990) *Biol. Chem. Hoppe-Seyler* **371**, 1–6.
- 6 Zachau, H.G. (1993) *Gene*, in press.
- 7 Weichhold, G.M., Ohnheiser, R. & Zachau, H.G. (1993) *Genomics* **16**, 503–511.
- 8 Weichhold, G.M., Huber, C., Parnes, J.R. & Zachau, H.G. (1993) *Genomics* **16**, 512–514.
- 9 Pargent, W., Meindl, A., Thiebe, R., Mitzel, S. & Zachau, H.G. (1991) *Eur. J. Immunol.* **21**, 1821–1827.
- 10 Lautner-Rieske, A., Huber, C., Meindl, A., Pargent, W., Schäble, K.F., Thiebe, R., Zocher, I. & Zachau, H.G. (1992) *Eur. J. Immunol.* **22**, 1023–1029.
- 11 Huber, C., Huber, E., Lautner-Rieske, A., Schäble, K.F. & Zachau, H.G. (1993) *Eur. J. Immunol.*, in press.
- 12 Huber, C., Schäble, K.F., Huber, E., Klein, R., Meindl, A., Thiebe, R., Lamm, R. & Zachau, H.G. (1993) *Eur. J. Immunol.*, in press.
- 13 Lorenz, W., Schäble, K.F., Thiebe, R., Stavnezer, J. & Zachau, H.G. (1988) *Mol. Immunol.* **25**, 479–484.
- 14 Klobeck, H.-G. & Zachau, H.G. (1986) *Nucl. Acids Res.* **14**, 4591–4603.
- 15 Klobeck, H.-G., Zimmer, F.-J., Combrato, G. & Zachau, H.G. (1987) *Nucl. Acids Res.* **15**, 9655–9665.
- 16 Klein, R., Jaenichen, R. & Zachau, H.G. (1993) in press.
- 17 Schäble, K.F., Thiebe, R., Meindl, A., Flügel, A. & Zachau, H.G. (1993) in preparation.
- 18 Huber, C., Thiebe, R., Hameister, H., Smola, H., Lötscher, E. & Zachau, H.G. (1990) *Nucl. Acids Res.* **18**, 3475–3478.
- 19 Huber, C. (1993) *Doctoral Thesis*, Fakultät für Chemie und Pharmazie, Universität München.
- 20 Rösenthaller, F., Schäble, K.F., Thiebe, R. & Zachau, H.G. (1992) *Biol. Chem. Hoppe-Seyler* **373**, 177–186.
- 21 Meindl, A., Klobeck, H.-G., Ohnheiser, R. & Zachau, H.G. (1990) *Eur. J. Immunol.* **20**, 1855–1863.
- 22 Wilson, A.C., Ochman, H. & Prager, E.M. (1987) *Trends Genet.* **3**, 241–247.
- 23 Weichhold, G.M., Klobeck, H.-G., Ohnheiser, R., Combrato, G. & Zachau, H.G. (1990) *Nature (London)* **347**, 90–92.
- 24 Pargent, W., Schäble, K.F. & Zachau, H.G. (1991) *Eur. J. Immunol.* **21**, 1829–1835.
- 25 Scott, M.G., Crimmins, D.L., McCourt, D.W., Chung, G., Schäble, K.F., Thiebe, R., Quenzel, E.-M., Zachau, H.G. & Nahm, M.H. (1991) *J. Immunol.* **147**, 4007–4013.
- 26 Schäble, K.F. (1993) *Doctoral Thesis*, Fakultät für Chemie und Pharmazie, Universität München.
- 27 Straubinger, B., Thiebe, R., Huber, C., Osterholzer, E. & Zachau, H.G. (1988) *Biol. Chem. Hoppe-Seyler* **369**, 601–607.
- 28 Kabat, E.A., Wu, T.T., Perry, H.M., Gottesman, K.S. & Foeller, C. (1991) *NIH Publication* 91–3242, Bethesda, Maryland, USA.
- 29 Larrick, J.W., Danielson, L., Brenner, C.A., Wallace, E.F., Abrahamson, M., Fry, K.E. & Borrebaeck, C.A.K. (1989) *Bio/Technology* **7**, 934–938.
- 30 Mullinax, R.L., Gross, E.A., Amberg, J.R., Hay, B.N., Hogrefe, H.H., Kubitz, M.M., Greener, A., Alting-Mees, M., Ardourel, D., Short, J.M., Sorge, J.A. & Shopes, B. (1990) *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA* **87**, 8095–8099.
- 31 Marks, J.D., Hoogenboom, H.R., Bonnert, T.P., McCafferty, J., Griffith, A.D. & Winter, G. (1991) *J. Mol. Biol.* **222**, 581–597.
- 32 Marks, J.D., Tristem, M., Karpas, A. & Winter, G. (1991) *Eur. J. Immunol.* **21**, 985–991.
- 33 Kurth, J.H., Mountain, J.L. & Cavalli-Sforza, L.L. (1993) *Genomics* **16**, 69–77.
- 34 Falkner, F.G. & Zachau, H.G. (1984) *Nature (London)* **310**, 71–74.
- 35 Parslow, T.G., Blair, D.L., Murphy, W.J. & Granner, D.K. (1984) *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA* **81**, 2650–2654.
- 36 Falkner, F.G., Mocikat, R. & Zachau, H.G. (1986) *Nucl. Acids Res.* **14**, 8819–8827.
- 37 Mocikat, R., Falkner, F.G. & Zachau, H.G. (1989) in *Tissue Specific Gene Expression* (Renkawitz, R. ed.) pp. 73–85, VCH Verlag, Weinheim.
- 38 Eckhardt, L.A. (1992) *FASEB J.* **6**, 2553–2560.
- 39 Wirth, T., Staudt, L. & Baltimore, D. (1987) *Nature (London)* **329**, 174–178.
- 40 Bergman, Y., Rice, D., Grosschedl, R. & Baltimore, D. (1984) *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA* **81**, 7041–7045.
- 41 Högbom, E., Magnusson, A.-C. & Leanderson, T. (1991) *Nucleic Acids Res.* **19**, 4347–4354.
- 42 Mocikat, R., Pruijn, G.J.M., van der Vliet, P.E. & Zachau, H.G. (1988) *Nucl. Acids Res.* **16**, 3693–3704.
- 43 Faisst, S. & Meyer, S. (1992) *Nucleic Acids Res.* **20**, 3–26.
- 44 Devereux, J., Haeberli, P. & Smithies, O. (1984) *Nucleic Acids Res.* **12**, 387–395.
- 45 Hesse, J.E., Lieber, M.R., Mizuuchi, K. & Gellert, M. (1989) *Genes Developm.* **3**, 1053–1061.
- 46 Milstein, C. (1967) *Nature (London)* **216**, 330–332.
- 47 Hilschmann, N. (1969) *Naturwissenschaften* **56**, 195–205.
- 48 Kroemer, G., Helmberg, A., Bernot, A., Auffray, C. & Kofler, R. (1991) *Immunogenetics* **33**, 42–49.
- 49 Dul, J.L. & Argon, Y. (1990) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **87**, 8135–8139.
- 50 Zachau, H.G. (1989) in *Evolutionary Tinkering in Gene Expression* (Grunberg-Manago, M., Clark, B.F.C. & Zachau, H.G. eds.) pp. 111–119, Plenum Publishing, London.
- 51 Straubinger, B., Pech, M., Mühlebach, K., Jaenichen, H.-R., Bauer, H.-G. & Zachau, H.G. (1984) *Nucl. Acids Res.* **12**, 5265–5275.
- 52 Manheimer-Lory, A., Katz, J.B., Pillinger, M., Ghossein, C., Smith, A. & Diamond, B. (1991) *J. Exp. Med.* **174**, 1639–1652.
- 53 Jaenichen, H.-R., Pech, M., Lindenmaier, W., Wildgruber, N. & Zachau, H.G. (1984) *Nucl. Acids Res.* **12**, 5249–5263.
- 54 Chen, P.P., Albrandt, K., Orida, N.K., Radoux, V., Chen, E.Y., Schrantz, R., Liu, F.-T. & Carson, D.A. (1986) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **83**, 8318–8322.
- 55 Scott, M.G., Crimmins, D.L., McCourt, D.W., Zocher, I., Thiebe, R., Zachau, H.G. & Nahm, M.H. (1989) *J. Immunol.* **143**, 4110–4166.
- 56 Straubinger, B., Huber, E., Lorenz, W., Osterholzer, E., Pargent, W., Pech, M., Pohlenz, H.-D., Zimmer, F.-J. & Zachau, H.G. (1988) *J. Mol. Biol.* **199**, 23–34.
- 57 Straubinger, B., Osterholzer, E. & Zachau, H.G. (1987) *Nucl. Acids Res.* **15**, 9567–9575.
- 58 Radoux, V., Chen, P.P., Sorge, J.A. & Carson, D.A. (1986) *J. Exp. Med.* **164**, 2119–2124.

- 59 Liu, M.-F., Robbins, D.L., Crowley, J.J., Sinha, S., Kozin, F., Kipps, T.J., Carson, D.A. & Chen, P.P. (1989) *J. Immunol.* **142**, 688–694.
- 60 Pech, M., Jaenichen, H.-R., Pohlenz, H.-D., Neumaier, P.S., Klobeck, H.-G. & Zachau, H.G. (1984) *J. Mol. Biol.* **176**, 189–204.
- 61 Pech, M., Smola, H., Pohlenz, H.-D., Straubinger, B., Gerl, R. & Zachau, H.G. (1985) *J. Mol. Biol.* **183**, 291–299.
- 62 Pech, M. & Zachau, H.G. (1984) *Nucl. Acids Res.* **12**, 9229–9236.
- 63 Victor, K.D., Randen, I., Thompson, K., Forre, O., Natvig, J.B., Fu, S.M. & Capra, J.D. (1991) *J. Clin. Invest.* **87**, 1603–1613.
- 64 Stavnezer, J., Kekish, O., Batter, D., Grenier, J., Balazs, I., Henderson, E. & Zegers, B.J.M. (1985) *Nucl. Acids Res.* **13**, 3495–3514.
- 65 Klobeck, H.-G., Bornkamm, G.W., Combriato, G., Mocikat, R., Pohlenz, H.-D. & Zachau, H.G. (1985) *Nucl. Acids Res.* **13**, 6515–6529.
- 66 Pohlenz, H.-D., Straubinger, B., Thiebe, R., Pech, M., Zimmer, F.-J. & Zachau, H.G. (1987) *J. Mol. Biol.* **193**, 241–253.
- 67 Klopstock, T. (1991) *Doctoral Thesis*, Medizinische Fakultät der Universität München.
- 68 Zimmer, F.-J., Huber, C., Quenzel, M., Schek, H., Stiller, C., Thiebe, R. & Zachau, H.G. (1990) *Biol. Chem. Hoppe-Seyler* **371**, 283–290.
- 69 Lötscher, E., Grzeschik, K.-H., Bauer, H.G., Pohlenz, H.-D., Straubinger, B. & Zachau, H.G. (1986) *Nature (London)* **320**, 456–458.
- 70 Lötscher, E., Zimmer, F.-J., Klopstock, T., Grzeschik, K.-H., Jaenichen, R., Straubinger, B. & Zachau, H.G. (1988) *Gene* **69**, 215–223.
- 71 Straubinger, B., Thiebe, R., Pech, M. & Zachau, H.G. (1988) *Gene* **69**, 209–214.

Karlheinz F. Schäble and Hans G. Zachau, Institut für Physiologische Chemie, Universität München, Schillerstr. 44, D-80336 München.

**Addendum to Table 1**

a) Cox, Tomlinson and Winter amplified from genomic DNA by PCR FR1-CDR3 sequences and called four of them "new gene segments" (Eur. J. Immunol. 24, 827-836, 1994). However, the sequences do not correspond to new gene loci but have to be considered as alleles of published V<sub>κ</sub> genes and orphans, as far as this can be concluded in the absence of intron sequences and data on the genomic context.

DPK14, A21/A5; DPK37, Z3; LFVK5, V118; LFVK431, L1.

The comparisons are described in Klein and Zachau, Ann. NY Acad. Sci., in press.

b) The reference for the gene A11a is [54].

c) Alternative accession numbers  
for Z2, Z3, and Z4 are S37418/19/21.

**Corrigendum of Table 3**

Subgroup III: intron length [bp] 168-1446;  
similarity [%] 64-100.

**Update of the list of references**

- 4 (1994) 2. Edition, in press.
- 6 (1993) Gene 135, 167-173.
- 11 (1993) Eur. J. Immunol. 23, 2860-2867.
- 12 (1993) Eur. J. Immunol. 23, 2868-2875.
- 16 (1993) Eur. J. Immunol. 23, 3248-3271.
- 17 (1994) Biol. Chem. Hoppe-Seyler 375, 189-199.
- 19 (1994) Genomics 22, 213-215.



*Dedicated to the memory of Georges Kohler*

**Immunoglobulin Genes**  
**Second edition**

Edited by

**T. Honjo**

*Kyoto University, Japan*

**F. W. Alt**

*Howard Hughes Medical Institute Research Laboratories,  
The Children's Hospital, Boston*



**ACADEMIC PRESS**

*Harcourt Brace & Company, Publishers*  
London, San Diego, New York, Boston, Sydney, Tokyo, Toronto

ACADEMIC PRESS LIMITED  
24-28 Oval Road  
LONDON NW1 7DX, UK

*U. S. Edition Published by*  
ACADEMIC PRESS INC.  
San Diego, CA 92101, USA

This book is printed on acid-free paper

Copyright © 1995 ACADEMIC PRESS LIMITED

*All rights reserved*

B lymphocyte tolerance in the mouse, pages 365-378, and immunoglobulin variable region gene segments in human autoantibodies, pages 379-396, are US government works in the public domain and not subject to copyright.

No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical including photocopying, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system without permission in writing from the publisher.

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

ISBN 0 12 053640 4

Typeset by Phoenix Photosetting, Chatham  
Printed and bound by Harnolls Ltd, Bodmin, Cornwall

## Contents

<i>Contributors</i>	vii
<i>Foreword</i>	xi
<i>Preface to first edition</i>	xv
<i>Preface to second edition</i>	xvii

### PART I: B CELLS

1	B-cell differentiation in humans P D Burrows, H W Schroeder Jr and M D Cooper	3
2	The role of B cell and pre-B-cell receptors in development and growth control of the B-lymphocyte cell lineage F Melchers	33
3	The maturation of the antibody response C Milstein and C Rada	57
4	Development of B-cell subsets S M Wells, A M Stall, A B Kantor and J A Herzenberg	83
5	Regulation of B-cell differentiation by stromal cells E A Faust, D C Saffran and O N Witte	103
6	Antigen receptors on B lymphocytes M Reith	129

### PART II: ORGANIZATION AND REARRANGEMENT OF IMMUNOGLOBULIN GENES

7	Immunoglobulin heavy chain loci of mouse and human T Honjo and F Matsuda	145
8	The human immunoglobulin $\kappa$ genes H G Zachau	173
9	Immunoglobulin $\lambda$ genes E Selsing and L E Datch	193

10	The variable region gene assembly mechanism A Okada and F W Alt	205
11	Regulation of class switch recombination of the immunoglobulin heavy chain genes J Zhang, F Alt and T Honjo	235
12	Generation of diversity by post-rearrangement diversification mechanisms: the chicken and the sheep antibody repertoires J-C Weill and C-A Reynaud	267
13	Immunoglobulin heavy chain genes of rabbit K L Knight and C Tunyaplin	289
14	The structure and organization of immunoglobulin genes in lower vertebrates J P Rast, M K Anderson and G W Litman	315
<b>PART III: IMMUNOGLOBULIN GENE EXPRESSION</b>		
15	Ig gene expression and regulation in Ig transgenic mice U Storb	345
16	B-lymphocyte tolerance in the mouse D Némazee	365
17	Immunoglobulin variable region gene segments in human autoantibodies K N Potter and J D Capra	379
18	Regulation of immunoglobulin gene transcription K Calame and S Ghosh	397
	Index	423

## Contributors

- FW Alt**  
Howard Hughes Medical Institute Research Laboratories, The Children's Hospital, 300 Longwood Avenue, Boston, MA 02115, USA
- MK Anderson**  
Department of Molecular Genetics, All Children's Hospital, 801 Sixth St South, St Petersburg, FL 33701-4899, USA
- PD Burrows**  
Division of Developmental and Clinical Immunology, Departments of Microbiology, Medicine and Pediatrics, University of Alabama at Birmingham, Wallace Tumor Institute, UAB Station, Birmingham, AL, USA
- K Calame**  
Columbia University College of Physicians and Surgeons, Department of Microbiology, 701 West 168th Street, New York, NY 10032-2704, USA
- JD Capra**  
Southwestern Medical School, Department of Microbiology, 5323 Hines Boulevard, Dallas, TX 75235, USA
- MD Cooper**  
Howard Hughes Medical Institute, Department of Pediatrics Microbiology, University of Alabama at Birmingham, 263 Wallace Tumor Institute, UAB Station, Birmingham, AL 35294, USA
- LE Daltch**  
Tufts University School of Medicine, Department of Pathology, 136 Harrison Avenue, Boston, MA 02111, USA
- EA Faust**  
Howard Hughes Medical Institute Research Laboratories, University of California, Los Angeles, 5-748 MacDonald Building, 10833 Le Conte Avenue, Los Angeles, CA 90024-1662, USA
- S Ghosh**  
Howard Hughes Medical Institute, Yale University, 295 Congress Ave 154 BCMH, New Haven, CT 06510, USA
- UA Herzenberg**  
Stanford University School of Medicine, Department of Genetics, Immunogenetics and Cell Sorting Laboratory, Stanford, CA 94305-1662, USA

# Immunoglobulin heavy chain loci of mouse and human

Tasuku Honjo and Fumihiko Matsuda

*Department of Medical Chemistry, Faculty of Medicine and Center for Molecular Biology and Genetics, Kyoto University, Sakyo-ku, Kyoto 606, Japan*

Introduction .....	145
Human $V_H$ locus .....	146
Mouse $V_H$ locus .....	156
$C_H$ locus .....	164

## INTRODUCTION

The immunoglobulin (Ig) molecule is composed of the heavy (H) and light (L) chains, both of which consist of the variable (V) and constant (C) regions. The V region is responsible for antigen binding whereas the C<sub>H</sub> region specifies the isotype of Ig. Genes encoding IgH V regions are split into V<sub>H</sub>, D<sub>H</sub> and J<sub>H</sub> segments, each of which is comprised of multiple copies. One each of the three segments is generally assembled into a functional V<sub>H</sub> gene by a somatic genetic event called VDJ recombination. The V<sub>H</sub> locus that contains these gene segments is located on human chromosome 14q32.33 (Croce *et al.*, 1979; Kirsch *et al.*, 1982) or mouse chromosome 12 (D'eustachio *et al.*, 1980). There are nine and eight C<sub>H</sub> genes in the human and murine C<sub>H</sub> loci, respectively. The cluster of C<sub>H</sub> genes is referred to as the C<sub>H</sub> locus. The V<sub>H</sub> and C<sub>H</sub> loci are tightly linked on the chromosome. The distance between the V<sub>H</sub> locus segment nearest the 3' end (J<sub>H</sub>) and the C<sub>H</sub> gene nearest the 5' end (C<sub>H</sub>) is less than 8 kb in both mouse and human (Lin *et al.*, 1980; Raveitch *et al.*, 1981). Recent studies have shown that the human V<sub>H</sub> and C<sub>H</sub> loci span at least 1.1 megabases (Mb) (Matsuda *et al.*, 1993; Cook *et al.*, 1994) and 0.3 Mb (Botlano *et al.*, 1989; Hofer *et al.*, 1989), respectively. Thus the IgH locus combining the V<sub>H</sub> and C<sub>H</sub> loci constitutes a huge multigene family. The aim of this chapter is to summarize the current knowledge of the organization and structure of the mouse and human IgH loci and to discuss its biological significance and implications.

There are a number of reasons why the complete elucidation of the  $Igh$  locus is important to immunologists as well as geneticists. From a geneticist's point of view it is fascinating to elucidate how the multigene family has evolved and how a large number of  $V_H$  segments are maintained. These questions may be answered more clearly by direct comparison of the  $Igh$  loci between related species. Complete knowledge of the organization and structure of the germline  $V_H$  segments may provide answers to a number of questions essential to Ig repertoire formation and expression. Obviously, the total number of  $V_H$  segments determines the upper limit of the germline Ig repertoire, although somatic genetic events including V(D)J recombination and hypermutation amplify the expressed repertoire tremendously. Immunologists are interested in polymorphic variation of the number and repertoire of germline  $V_H$  segments and in the association of such polymorphism with disease susceptibility. It is known that some  $V_H$  segments are overrepresented, suggesting that  $V_H$  usage may not be random. It is important to know whether the germline organization or structure of  $V_H$  segments have anything to do with selective biased usage. Isolation of the total human  $V_H$  segments has played important roles for generation of human Ig in J segment-disrupted mice carrying human Ig miniloci (Green *et al.*, 1994; Taylor *et al.*, 1994). Needless to say, studies on the complete organization of the  $C_H$  locus are the basis for understanding the molecular mechanism of class switching (see Chapter 11).

Since the publication of the first edition of this book (1989), a major breakthrough was made in elucidation of the human  $Igh$  locus by completion of the physical mapping of human  $V_H$  segments using yeast artificial chromosome (YAC) cloning. Organization and structure of human  $V_H$  segments have been extensively studied, providing a tremendously useful reference to map expressed  $V_H$  genes, and their polymorphisms. Unfortunately, however, little progress has been made in the study of the mouse  $V_H$  locus, though comparison of  $V_H$  organization between mouse and human would be extremely interesting.

## HUMAN $V_H$ LOCUS

### $V_H$ subgroups and families

Human  $V_H$  regions were divided into three subgroups based on amino acid sequences (reviewed in Kabat *et al.*, 1991). These protein subgroups have been further subdivided into six distinct  $V_H$  families defined by nucleotide sequence homology.  $V_H$  segments that show 80% or greater similarity are considered to be in the same family, while  $V_H$  segments that have less than 70% similarity to one another form different  $V_H$  families (Kodaira *et al.*, 1986; Lee *et al.*, 1987; Shen *et al.*, 1987; Bernini *et al.*, 1988). Such criteria have been supported by construction of the phylogenetic tree of 33 functional  $V_H$  segments located in the 3' 0.8-Mb region of the  $V_H$  locus (Fig. 1) (Hano *et al.*, 1994). According to this phylogenetic tree human  $V_H$  segments are

### Subgroup $V_H$ Family

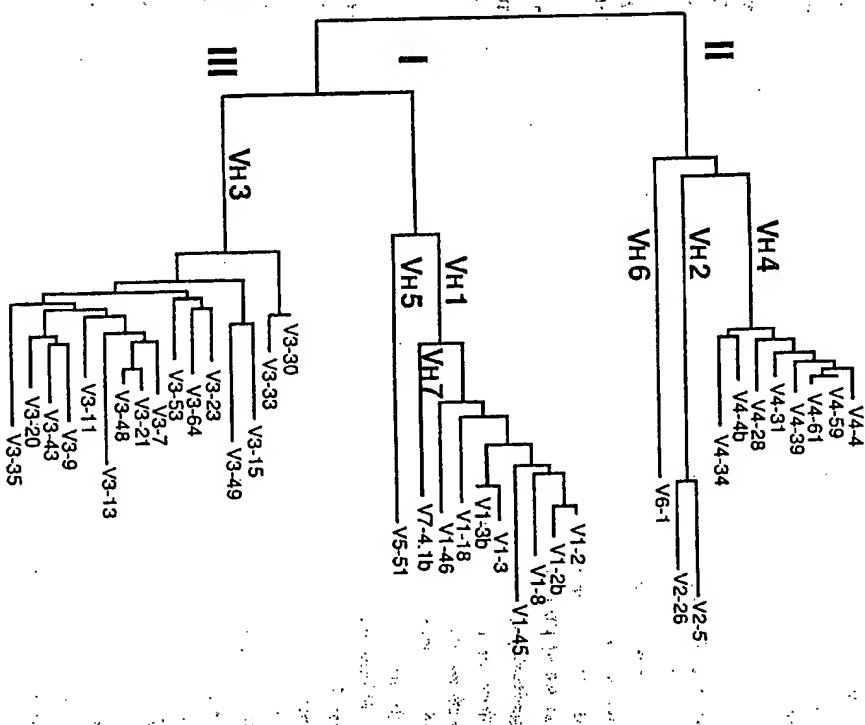


Fig. 1. Phylogenetic tree of human germline functional  $V_H$  segments. (Modified from Hano *et al.*, 1994.)

divided into two groups: subgroup II and ancestor of subgroup I and III. Subgroup II was then divided into  $V_{H2}$ ,  $V_{H4}$  and  $V_{H6}$  families. Subgroup I was split into  $V_{H1}$  and  $V_{H5}$  families. A unique set of  $V_H$  segments, which share high homology (80–82%) with  $V_{H1}$  but differ from  $V_{H1}$  at a clustered region between framework 2 (FR2) and FR3, has been proposed to be classified as  $V_{H7}$  family (Schroeder *et al.*, 1990). According to the above definition of the  $V_H$  family,  $V_{H7}$  should be a subfamily of  $V_{H1}$  or a family captured in transition from  $V_{H1}$  to independence (Kirkham and

Schroeder, 1994). Nonetheless, the classification of  $V_H 7$  is useful as at least six members of  $V_H 7$  have been found and mapped at dispersed positions in the  $V_H$  locus (van Dijk *et al.*, 1993). Subgroup III contains the largest number of members; yet constitutes a single family,  $V_H 3$ . It is interesting to note that the  $V_H 4$  (Lee *et al.*, 1987),  $V_H 5$  (Shen *et al.*, 1987),  $V_H 6$  (Berman *et al.*, 1988) and  $V_H 7$  families have been identified by comparison of nucleotide sequences of  $V_H$  segments. The  $V_H 4$  family members are most strongly conserved, suggesting that  $V_H 4$  may have evolved most recently (Lee *et al.*, 1987; Haino *et al.*, 1994). However, frequent recombination between  $V_H$  segments makes it difficult to estimate the precise time of divergence among  $V_H$  segments. The  $V_H 5$  and  $V_H 6$  families contain only two and one members respectively.

There are several  $V_H$  family-specific conserved regions in human germline  $V_H$  segments (Kabat *et al.*, 1991; Tomlinson *et al.*, 1992; Matsuda *et al.*, 1993; Haino *et al.*, 1994). Family-specific sequences were found in codons 9–30 in FR1 and codons 60–85 of FR3. It is important to note that codons 60–65 in the 3' portion of complementarity determining region 2 (CDR2) were conserved in a family-specific way. More or less universally conserved were codons 1–8, FR2 (codons 38–47) and codons 86–92, in which the embedded heptamer recombination signal is located. More extensive structural comparison of  $V_H$  subregions is found elsewhere (Tomlinson *et al.*, 1992; Kirkham and Schroeder, 1994).

Comparison of upstream sequences of  $V_H$  segments revealed striking family-specific conservation. The locations of the octamer motif and TATA box are different among families (Haino *et al.*, 1994). A heptamer sequence with consensus CTCATGA is located 2–22 bp upstream of the octamer motif in mouse  $V_H$  segments (Eaton and Calame, 1987; Siu *et al.*, 1987) and is required for full  $V_H$  promoter activity in mouse lymphoid cells (Ballard and Bothwell, 1986; Eaton and Calame, 1987). Although the heptamer element is located 2 bp upstream of the octamer motif of the human  $V_H 1$  family, the heptamer element is not detectable around similar places of the other families. This finding does not support the hypothesis that the heptamer element is involved in the activation of the H-chain promoter by the *oci* protein before the activation of the L-chain promoter, which does not contain the heptamer motif (Kemler *et al.*, 1989).

### Physical mapping of human $V_H$ segments

Studies on physical mapping of the human  $V_H$  locus were initiated by cosmid cloning (Kodaira *et al.*, 1986). Distribution of  $V_H$  families on 23 cosmid clones with average size 40 kb has shown that members of different  $V_H$  families are interspersed, in contrast to the finding that the same family members tend to cluster in the mouse  $V_H$  locus (Kemp *et al.*, 1981; Rechavi *et al.*, 1982). Another important conclusion from early studies on physical mapping using phage and cosmid vectors is the presence of abundant pseudogenes (about 40%), many of which are highly conserved with only a few point mutations (Givol *et al.*, 1981; Kodaira *et al.*, 1986). A similar type of

analysis mapped the D3 segment only 22 kb upstream of the  $J_H$  cluster (Buluwela *et al.*, 1988; Matsuda *et al.*, 1988) and the  $V_H 6$  segment 20 kb upstream to the D4 segment (Buluwela and Rabbitts, 1988; Sato *et al.*, 1988; Schroeder *et al.*, 1988).

A more general overview of the whole human  $V_H$  locus has been provided by studies using pulsed field gel electrophoresis (PFGE). Human DNA digested with rare restriction site enzymes was separated by PFGE and hybridized with various  $V_H$  family-specific probes. Such an analysis allowed the  $V_H$  content to be examined on DNA fragments of a few hundred to one thousand kilobases. The total size of the human  $V_H$  locus was estimated to be about 2.5–3.0 Mb (Berman *et al.*, 1988; Matsuda *et al.*, 1988) including the D5-hybridizing fragments that later mapped to chromosome 15. Such studies also confirmed the previous conclusion that human  $V_H$  families are intermingled. PFGE analysis using two-dimensional electrophoresis has provided a more precise determination of the total  $V_H$  locus of about 1.2 Mb, on which 76 human  $V_H$  segments were mapped using *SfiI*, *BssHII* and *NotI* digests (Walter *et al.*, 1990). Although the precise location of each  $V_H$  segment cannot be determined and some  $V_H$  segments were inevitably missed, this study has made a great contribution to defining the overall organization of the human  $V_H$  locus. The same group further refined the mapping using the deletion profile of  $V_H$  segments associated with VDJ recombination in human B cell lines (Walter *et al.*, 1991a).

Introduction of the YAC vector has been essential to complete the physical mapping of the human  $V_H$  locus (Fig. 2). The first report using YAC cloning identified and located five  $V_H$  segments proximal to the  $D_H$  segments (Shin *et al.*, 1991). These authors proposed to rename all the  $V_H$  segments by the family number and the order from the 3' end of the  $V_H$  locus. For example, V3-36P indicates a  $V_H 3$  family member located thirty-sixth from the  $V_H$  segment nearest the 3' end, i.e. V6-1. P indicates the pseudogene. An insertional polymorphic  $V_H$  segment is indicated by a number with decimal point. This nomenclature of  $V_H$  segments was controversial not only because the investigators named  $V_H$  segments idiosyncratically but also because many expressed  $V_H$  sequences containing somatic mutations could not be easily assigned as different  $V_H$  segments. The newly proposed nomenclature defined  $V_H$  segments only when they were mapped on the chromosome, which had been expected to be completed in a few years. The same group in Kyoto has completed mapping of about 70% (0.8 Mb) of the human  $V_H$  locus by analysing more than seven overlapping YAC clones. All the YAC clones were subcloned into either cosmids, phages or plasmids and the nucleotide sequences of 64  $V_H$  segments were determined (Matsuda *et al.*, 1993).  $V_H$  segments at around 770–740, 710, 555, 430, 360 and 200–100 kb upstream of the  $J_H$  segments have the same transcriptional orientation as the  $J_H$  segments. The results indicate that there is no gross inversion in the human  $V_H$  locus, and that the majority of  $V_H$  segments rearrange to associate with the  $D_H$  and  $J_H$  segments by looping-out but not by inversion, in contrast to the human  $V_L$  locus (see Chapter 8). Subsequently, Cook *et al.* (1994) identified the 5' end of the human  $V_H$  locus using human telomere activity in yeast and a chromosome translocation that places telomere-proximal  $V_H$  segments onto chromosome 8. A 200-kb clone (Y16H6) was isolated and subcloned into cosmids.  $V_H$  family-specific primers were used to



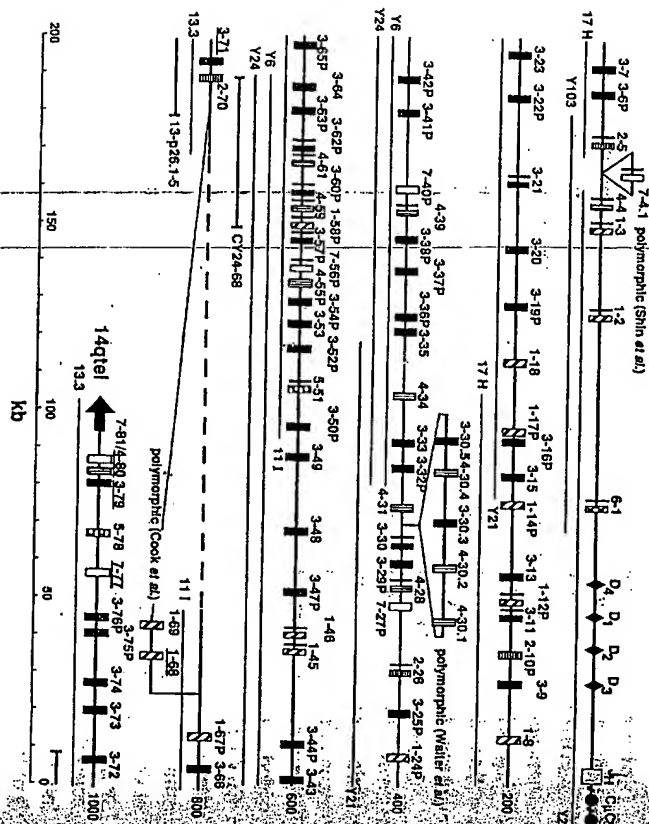


Fig. 2. Organization of the human IgH locus. The 1.1-Mb DNA is shown by six thick horizontal lines with the 3' end at the top right corner. VAC and cosmid clones covering the region are shown with their names by horizontal lines below. V<sub>H</sub> segments belonging to V<sub>H</sub>1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7 families are indicated by the symbols  $\square$ ,  $\blacksquare$ ,  $\boxplus$ ,  $\boxminus$  and  $\boxtimes$ . Five V<sub>H</sub> segments whose sequences have not been determined are underlined.

amplify V<sub>H</sub> coding regions and to determine 19 V<sub>H</sub> sequences identified on ylgH6. The two V<sub>H</sub> segments nearest the 3' end on ylgH6 were virtually identical to V3-63P and V3-64, which are the V<sub>H</sub> segments nearest the 5' end previously identified by the Kyoto group (Matsuda *et al.*, 1993), thus linking the entire V<sub>H</sub> locus physically by YAC clones. The Kyoto group also isolated an independent clone containing the V<sub>H</sub> segments nearest the 5' end and the telomere (F. Matsuda *et al.*, unpublished data). Interestingly, the distance between the telomere sequence and the 5'-end V<sub>H</sub> segment (V7-81) is only a few kilobases. The telomere-containing YAC clone (13.3) of the Kyoto group completely overlaps with ylgH6 down to V2-70, confirming the telomeric end of the physical map by the Cambridge group. However, another YAC clone (11) extending toward the telomeric end from V3-50P contains a striking difference starting from V1-67P. The Kyoto group carried out two-colour *in situ* hybridization of interphase nuclei using cosmid clones as probes and estimated that the gap between CY24-68 and 13-p26.1-5 (Fig. 2) is either 194 ± 27 kb or 109 kb depending on haplotypes. The distance between the same clones is about 90 kb

Table 1 Summary of the human V<sub>H</sub> segments\*

Chromosomes (length)	V <sub>H</sub> families							Total
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
14q32 (1100 kb)	14	4	48	12	2	1	6	87
15q11 (>250 kb)	6	0	1	1	0	0	0	8
16p11 (>700 kb)	4	1	11	0	0	0	0	16
Total (>2 Mb)	24	5	60	13	2	1	6	111

\*The number of V<sub>H</sub> segments on chromosome 14 is calculated by the results from Matsuda *et al.* (1993) and Cook *et al.* (1994). Seven polymorphic V<sub>H</sub> segments reported (Shin *et al.*, 1991; Walter *et al.*, 1993) are included. Information of V<sub>H</sub> segments on chromosomes 15 and 16 is taken from Nagakawa *et al.* (1994) and Tomkinson *et al.* (1994).

according to the map of ylgH6. It is clear that there is a large insertion polymorphism (about 90 kb) between V1-67P and V2-70. ylgH6 is likely to represent a haplotype with a large deletion as described (Walter *et al.*, 1990). The physical mapping of the human V<sub>H</sub> locus completed by the linkage between ylgH6 and Y6 (and Y24) shows that the total number of V<sub>H</sub> segments is 87, although there are several polymorphic insertions or deletions (Table 1). The only caveat to the above conclusion is cloning artefacts by YAC cloning. The best way to exclude such artefacts is to isolate independent overlapping clones, which has been done for most of the V<sub>H</sub> regions so far analysed.

## V<sub>H</sub> segment number and polymorphisms

One of the most important goals in the study of the human V<sub>H</sub> locus is to determine the total number of V<sub>H</sub> segments. Given the almost complete physical map of the human V<sub>H</sub> locus, the total number of V<sub>H</sub> segments in the smallest haplotype is calculated to be 81 with an additional six or more polymorphic V<sub>H</sub> segments (Table 1), which is in general agreement with the previous estimation using two-dimensional-PFG (Walter *et al.*, 1990) or specific amplification of V<sub>H</sub> segments by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) (Tomkinson *et al.*, 1992). Polymorphic insertion (or deletion) appears to cluster at three regions: V4-4/V2-5, V3-30/V4-31 and V1-67P/V2-70. It is interesting to know whether any particular DNA sequences are responsible for these clustered polymorphic deletions (or insertions). A project to determine the entire nucleotide sequence of the human V<sub>H</sub> locus is under way by the Kyoto group and will provide an answer to the above question. As previously analysed there are abundant pseudogenes. At least 32 out of 87 mapped V<sub>H</sub> segments are pseudogenes; four V<sub>H</sub> segments were not found in the expressed V<sub>H</sub> database; 46 V<sub>H</sub> segments were shown to be used, and the remaining five V<sub>H</sub> segments were unsequenced (Matsuda *et al.*, 1993; Cook *et al.*, 1994; Haino *et al.*, 1994). The 46 V<sub>H</sub> segments used are classified into 8 V<sub>H</sub>1, 3 V<sub>H</sub>2, 22 V<sub>H</sub>3, 10 V<sub>H</sub>4, 1 V<sub>H</sub>5, 1 V<sub>H</sub>6 and 1 V<sub>H</sub>7 family segments.

Restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) and DNA sequencing have shown that there are a number of polymorphic V<sub>H</sub> alleles. One of the most

polymorphic  $V_H$  segments is V1-69 with 13 known alleles including duplication (Sasso *et al.*, 1993). Polymorphism may be of functional significance. One obvious possibility is expansion of repertoire. Polymorphic  $V_H$  may affect the affinity of the antibody for its ligand as even mutations in FR residues of the Ig have been shown to influence the binding affinity (Froese and Winter, 1992). Furthermore, expression of particular allelic variants could influence the efficiency of H-L chain pairing or interaction with B cell super-antigens. It is important to test whether  $V_H$  polymorphisms are associated with disease susceptibility. Some reports have suggested the association of  $V_H$  polymorphisms with autoimmune diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosus and multiple sclerosis (Yang *et al.*, 1990; Walter *et al.*, 1991b), while others have reported the absence of a clear association (Hashimoto *et al.*, 1993; Shin *et al.*, 1993a).

### Physical mapping of $D_H$ and $J_H$ segments

The human  $V_H$  locus ends with a cluster of  $J_H$  gene segments lying just upstream of the  $C_H$  gene (Fig. 3). The human  $J_H$  cluster contains three pseudo  $J_H$  segments interspersed among six functional  $J_H$  segments (Ravetch *et al.*, 1981). A human counterpart to the murine DQ52  $D_H$  segment exists about 100 bp 5' of the first functional  $J_H$  (Ravetch *et al.*, 1981). A number of additional human  $D_H$  segments have been identified, including ones homologous to the murine DFL16 segments as well as a number of those that are markedly dissimilar in size and sequence (Siebenlist *et al.*, 1981; Schroeder *et al.*, 1987; Buluwela *et al.*, 1988; Ichihara *et al.*, 1988a,b; Zong *et al.*, 1988; Sonntag *et al.*, 1989; Shin *et al.*, 1993b). Initially, a family of  $D_H$  segments

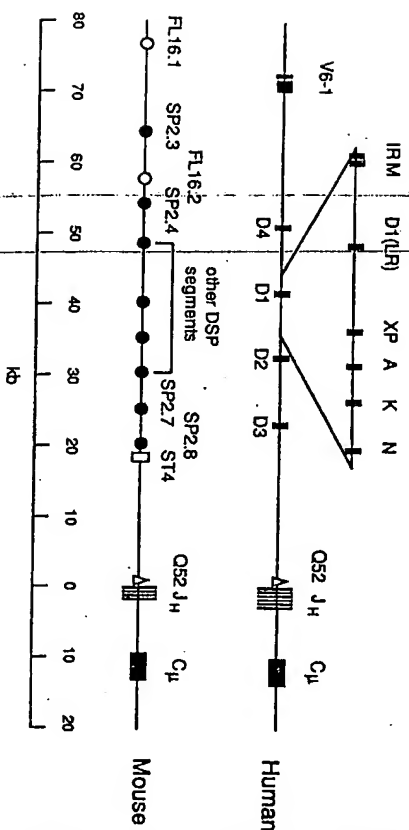


Fig. 3. Comparative map of human and mouse  $D_H$ - $J_H$  loci. Mapping information of human  $V_H$  and  $D_H$  segments is from Siebenlist *et al.* (1981), Matsuda *et al.* (1988), Sato *et al.* (1988) and Ichihara *et al.* (1988a,b). Mouse part is modified from Feeney and Riblet (1993).

(D1-D4) was shown to be encoded at 9-kb regular intervals between  $V_H$  and  $J_H$  clusters (Siebenlist *et al.*, 1981). Subsequently, six novel  $D_H$  segments (IR, M, XP, A, K, and N) were identified by nucleotide sequencing analysis of a 15-kb DNA fragment containing the D1 segment and its surrounding region (Ichihara *et al.*, 1988a,b) (Fig. 3). Each  $D_H$  cluster (D1-D4) appears to contain seven  $D_H$  segments (Buluwela *et al.*, 1988; Ichihara *et al.*, 1988a,b; Shin *et al.*, 1993b). Taken together, the estimated total number of  $D_H$  segments on chromosome 14 would be about 28. Frequent polymorphic deletion of the D1 segment was found in the Japanese population (Zong *et al.*, 1988). The most proximal known  $D_H$  segment of a human  $D_H$  family (D21/9) is 20 kb upstream of the DQ52  $J_H$  cluster (Buluwela *et al.*, 1988) in a position analogous to that of the proximal DSR2 segment of the mouse. Comparison of the nucleotide sequence of *Suncus murinus*, human and mouse from a position upstream of DQ52 to the  $S_H$  region indicated that  $D_H$  and  $J_H$  segments, consisting of coding and signal regions, are highly conserved (Okamura *et al.*, 1993). Moreover, although extensive sequence homology in the region between  $J_H$  and  $S_H$  was observed between mouse and human, only core portions of the enhancer region of *Suncus murinus* exhibited homology to those of mouse and human. Sequence conservation of  $J_H$  segments in *Suncus murinus*, mouse and human was observed not only at the amino acid level but also at the nucleotide level including the third letters of the codons, which is difficult to explain by selection of the protein structure.

### $V_H$ and $D_H$ segments on chromosome 15 and 16

Although the  $V_H$  locus is located at the telomere end of chromosome 14q, several  $V_H$  and two  $D_H$  clusters remained unmapped for some time. The first evidence that a  $D_H$  segment is located on chromosome 15 was obtained by *in situ* hybridization (Chung *et al.*, 1984). Subsequently, studies using *in situ* hybridization as well as human/rodent somatic hybrid cells (Cherif and Berger, 1990; Matsuda *et al.*, 1990; Nagaoka *et al.*, 1994; Tomlinson *et al.*, 1994) identified two  $V_H$  orphon loci on chromosome 15q11 and chromosome 16p11.

Studies on cosmid and YAC clones derived from these orphon loci revealed several striking findings (Matsuda *et al.*, 1990; Nagaoka *et al.*, 1994). First, about 40% of  $V_H$  segments in both loci (three out of seven  $V_H$  on chromosome 16 and one out of three  $V_H$  on chromosome 15) are apparently functional. A totally different approach based on PCR, using somatic cell hybrid DNAs as templates, specifically amplified 24  $V_H$  segments including 10 apparently functional ones on chromosomes 15 and 16 (Tomlinson *et al.*, 1994). Second, putative origins for the orphon  $V_H$  segments on chromosomes 15 and 16 were found in the 0.43–0.25 Mb  $J_H$ -proximal  $V_H$  region on chromosome 14 (Fig. 4). Comparison of the corresponding  $V_H$  segments suggests that a DNA fragment of more than 100 kb might have been translocated simultaneously to chromosomes 15 and 16 approximately 20 million years ago. Four overlapping YAC clones covering the  $V_H$  orphon locus on chromosome 16 were isolated, and seven  $V_H$  segments were identified and sequenced. All of



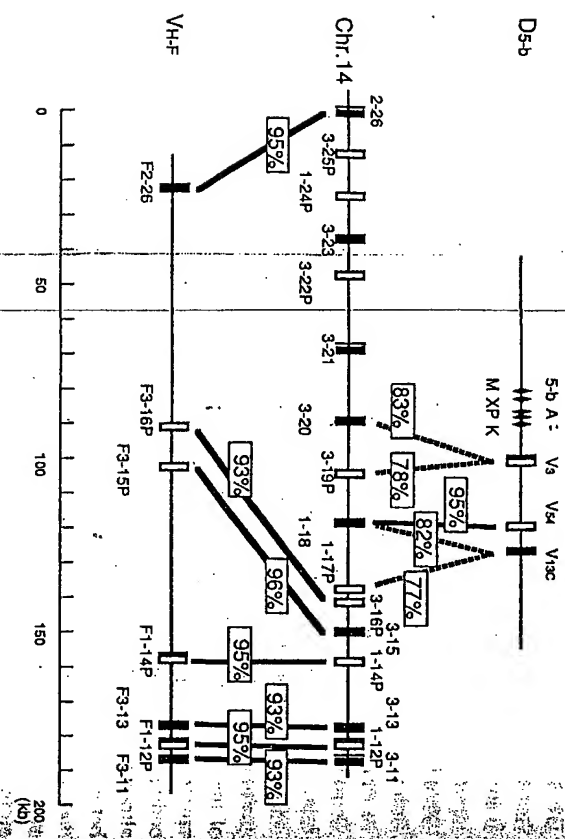


Fig. 4. Comparison of  $V_H$  segments on chromosomes 15 and 16 with their counterparts on chromosome 14. (Modified from Nagaoka *et al.*, 1994.)

seven orphon  $V_H$  segments have more than 93% identity with the corresponding  $V_H$  segments on chromosome 14. The most remarkable homology was found between two truncated pseudogenes, VF1-12P and V1-12P, in which the homology extends into the region 3' to the truncation site. The homology between the orphon  $V_H$  segments on chromosome 15 and the corresponding  $V_H$  segments on chromosome 14 is less remarkable except for one pair (V54/V1-18). *In situ* hybridization studies using cosmid clones confirmed that two orphon loci are located on chromosome 15q11-q12 and chromosome 16p11 (Nagaoka *et al.*, 1994; Tomlinson *et al.*, 1994). The orphon locus on chromosome 15 appears to contain at least four clusters of  $D_H$  segments, each of which consists of five  $D_H$  segments (Matsuda *et al.*, 1990; Nagaoka *et al.*, 1994). One of the  $D_H$  clusters (D5-b) is flanked by three  $V_H$  segments. Interestingly, these three  $V_H$  segments are located 3' to the D5-b cluster. The polarity of one of them (V3) (Matsuda *et al.*, 1988, 1990; Nagaoka *et al.*, 1994) was determined and shown to have the same transcriptional orientation relative to  $D_H$ .

### $V_H$ segment usage and repertoire formation

Compelling evidence indicates that  $V_H$ ,  $D_H$  and  $J_H$  segments are not used equally. Biased usage of particular segments during early phases of ontogeny was first reported in mouse (Yancopoulos *et al.*, 1984; Reith *et al.*, 1986). Similarly, dominant expression

of V1-6,  $D_H$ Q52 and  $J_H$ 4 (Berman *et al.*, 1991; Pascual *et al.*, 1993) in early ontogeny was demonstrated in human. One study examined the  $V_H$  segments expressed in 14 and 10 independent H-chain cDNA sequences isolated from 130-day and 104-day human fetal liver cDNA libraries, respectively (Schroeder *et al.*, 1987; Schroeder and Wang, 1990). Notably, six of these sequences employed an identical  $V_H$  segment of the  $V_H$ 3 family (56P1 or V3-30), indicating that the early human repertoire is biased. Utilization of  $V_H$  segments may be influenced by a number of factors that can be grouped into (a) those affecting the recombination frequency and (b) those affecting selection of B cells expressing that particular  $V_H$  segment. Group (a) includes distance between  $D_H$  (or  $J_H$ ) and  $V_H$  segments, variation in the recombination signal sequence, and locations that favour the recombinase accessibility. Group (b) includes self-antigens and bacterial super-antigens.

The initial observation of the preferential usage of  $J_H$ -proximal  $V_H$  segments in mouse led to the hypothesis that the proximity of  $V_H$  segments to  $J_H$  favours biased expression of  $V_H$  segments in early stages of ontogeny. The complete physical mapping has clearly shown that the location of  $V_H$  segments within the locus has little association with the frequency of  $V_H$  usage in human.  $V_H$  segments often used preferentially in the early stages of ontogeny are V6-1, V1-2, V2-5, V3-13, V3-15, V3-23, V3-30, V5-51, V3-53 and V4-59 segments (Matsuda *et al.*, 1993). The V1-69 segment is also used frequently in peripheral B cells (Schwartz and Stoller, 1994). B-cell leukaemia, and autoantibodies (Zouali, 1992). This  $V_H$  segment is highly related to 51P1 cDNA, which is also found in the fetal repertoire and is localized approximately 900 kb upstream of the  $J_H$  cluster (Cook *et al.*, 1994). The results indicate that  $V_H$  segments preferentially used in early stages of ontogeny do not necessarily cluster in the  $J_H$ -proximal region.

Matsuda *et al.* (1993) have identified several germline  $V_H$  segments that were often used for autoantibodies, although it is premature to conclude that only limited  $V_H$  segments could be used for autoantibodies. The V3-30 sequence was homologous to cDNA for rheumatoid factors, RF-TS2, RF-S11 and RF-S12 (Pascual *et al.*, 1990). Also, this germline  $V_H$  segment was 99.7% identical to cDNA for Kim 1.6 auto-antibody (Cairns *et al.*, 1989), which has DNA-binding activity. The V3-30 segment is also the germline counterpart of 56P1 cDNA, which is most frequently expressed in the fetal repertoire (Schroeder *et al.*, 1987; Schroeder and Wang, 1990). Similarly, the V3-15 segment, which is the germline gene of 20P1 cDNA expressed in fetal liver, is 99.7% identical to cDNA for 4B4, an anti-Sm antibody (Sanz *et al.*, 1989). The V3-23 segment is identical to 18/2 (an anti-DNA autoantibody) (Desimoni *et al.*, 1987) and 30P1 cDNA found in fetal liver (Schroeder *et al.*, 1987; Schroeder and Wang, 1990). Such correlation between autoantibody  $V_H$  and early repertoire  $V_H$  may indicate that the preferred usage of  $V_H$  segments in early stages of ontogeny is due to positive selection by self-antigens rather than  $J_H$ -proximal location of the  $V_H$  segments. In any case, the complete physical map of the human  $V_H$  locus has contributed to the identification of germline origins of autoantibodies. Comparison of  $V_H$  usage among polymorphic individuals may also shed light on mechanisms for biased  $V_H$  usage.

## Pseudogenes and gene conversion

Are abundant, conserved pseudo  $V_H$  and orphor  $V_H$  segments of any functional significance? Since some orphor  $V_H$  segments are apparently functional, they can be joined, in theory, to  $V_H$  segments on chromosome 14 through interchromosomal recombination. As a  $V_H-D_H$  fusion product was isolated from a human B-cell line (Shin *et al.*, 1993b), a similar fusion of  $V_H-D_H$  can be formed on chromosome 15. In addition, germ-line transcripts of orphor  $V_H$  have been identified in human fetal liver (Cuisinier *et al.*, 1993), suggesting that orphor  $V_H$  loci might be targets of recombination. Unfortunately, however, no direct evidence for the expression or recombination of orphor  $V_H$  segments has been reported so far. Conserved pseudo-genes have been already shown to serve as sequence donors for gene conversion in other species. Somatic gene conversion (or double unequal crossing-over) has been shown to take place to amplify the V-region repertoire in chicken (Raynaud *et al.*, 1987; Tompson and Neiman, 1987) and rabbit (Becker and Knight, 1990) but not in mouse and human.

To explain the extensive conservation of  $V_H$  pseudogenes, evidence for germ-line gene conversion was looked for among  $V_H$  segments located in the 3' 0.8-Mb region (Haino *et al.*, 1994). To screen the candidates of gene conversion events, the substitution rates in the intron and the synonymous position of the coding region were compared in pairs of  $V_H$  segments. This is because the introns and the synonymous positions have been shown to evolve at high and remarkably similar rates in different genes (Miyata *et al.*, 1980; Hayashida and Miyata, 1983). In addition, both introns and synonymous positions behave like clocks as they accumulate base substitutions at approximately constant rates with respect to geological time. A clear difference in substitution rates between the intron and synonymous position of a given pair of  $V_H$  segments suggests some recombination events.

Haino *et al.* (1994) selected for comparison several pairs of  $V_H$  segments that appear to be recently duplicated. DNA sequence homology of each pair (V3-62P/V3-60P and V4-61P/V4-59) of the tandemly duplicated segments (Kodaira *et al.*, 1986) is greater than 94%, which is much higher than the homology to other published  $V_H$  segments belonging to the same  $V_H$  family. V3-62P and V3-60P have the same mutation in the heptamer signal sequence and the same 3-bp deletion in the 23-bp spacer of the recombination signal, suggesting that the internal duplication event occurred after these deleterious mutations. When V3-62P and V3-60P are compared using the above evolutionary molecular clock, the nucleotide difference ( $0.1537 \pm 0.0461$ ) at the intron ( $K^*$ ) was significantly greater than that ( $0.0821 \pm 0.0339$ ) at the synonymous position of the coding region ( $K^*$ ), indicating that the segmental change in the intron occurred in either V3-60P or V3-62P. To look for the origin of the modified sequence, intron sequences of V3-60P, V3-62P and other  $V_H$  segments were compared. When V3-43 and V3-62P are compared,  $K^*$  ( $0.0820 \pm 0.0280$ ) was very much smaller than  $K^*$  ( $0.4165 \pm 0.0761$ ). Nucleotide sequences of the leader, intron and FR1 sequences of V3-43 and V3-62P are highly homologous whereas their 3' halves are diverged. Such unusual homology of the 5'

half region, including the intron between V3-43 and V3-62P, is most likely explained by germ-line gene conversion because the 5' half sequence of V3-62P, which must have been similar to that of the duplicated partner V3-60P, appears to be unidirectionally corrected by V3-43. This example supports the hypothesis that gene conversion contributes to the maintenance of the pseudogene structure. Since many conserved pseudogenes can be either acceptors or donors of germ-line gene conversion, the high percentage of germ-line pseudogenes in the  $V_H$  segments should also contribute to germ-line  $V_H$  diversity. The authors cannot completely exclude the possibility that double unequal crossing-over took place between V3-43 and V3-60P and a modified allele of V3-43 had been lost.

## Evolution of the $V_H$ loci

Almost all animals that have Ig carry multiple  $V_H$  segments, indicating that duplication of  $V_H$  segments must have started quite a long time ago. It is also important to realize that reorganization of the  $V_H$  locus is still continuing as evidenced by dramatic differences in  $V_H$  locus organization between mouse and human. The recent translocation of  $V_H$  and  $D_H$  segments to chromosomes 15 and 16 is further evidence for dynamic reshuffling of the  $V_H$  locus.

Matsumura *et al.* (1994) looked for genetic traits that may allow steps of DNA rearrangement within the human  $V_H$  loci to be traced. They have used 14 non-repetitive intergenic probes that can detect two to seven cross-hybridizing bands within the 3' 0.8-Mb region of the  $V_H$  locus on chromosome 14. Most of these probes also detected a few bands on chromosome 15 or 16, further confirming the recent translocation of the orphor loci. Such studies identified several pairs of regions that are hybridized by an identical set of non-repetitive probes. Each of five different sets of probes hybridized as clusters to two or three regions in a dispersed manner. In most of the cases,  $V_H$  segments adjacent to homologous clusters are closely related. The dispersed appearance of these clusters of non-repetitive sequences indicated that translocation of DNA fragments frequently took place in the human  $V_H$  locus. Careful comparison of  $V_H$  sequences revealed obvious tandem duplication of sets of  $V_H$  segments: V3-33-V4-34/V3-30-V4-28 and V3-62P-V4-61/V3-60P-V4-59 (Kodaira *et al.*, 1986; Matsuda *et al.*, 1993). The longer duplication set is also associated with duplication of non-repetitive probes (Matsumura *et al.*, 1994). Among all these pairs of translocation and duplication none were inverted. Such non-repetitive probes should be useful not only to trace the evolution of the  $V_H$  locus but also to investigate polymorphisms of this locus. Extensive RFLP analyses using the probes isolated in this study would give us many markers to test the genetic linkage between RFLPs and susceptibility to immune disorders.

The human genome contains a large fraction of interspersed repetitive sequences such as short interspersed elements (Alu repeats) and long interspersed elements (L1 repeats). The total numbers of Alu and L1 repeats in the human genome have been estimated to be  $3-5 \times 10^5$  and  $10^4-10^5$ , respectively. Assuming random distribution of

these repeats throughout the genome, it is expected that there are 70–110 *Alu* repeats and 2–20 L1 repeats within the 730-kb region analysed in this study. Because recent studies have demonstrated that some repetitive sequences could be hotspots for recombination in the genome (Hyrien *et al.*, 1987; Devlin *et al.*, 1990), the frequent reorganization of the human *V<sub>H</sub>* locus may be associated with the content and distribution of these repetitive sequences.

However, comparison between the homologous (and possibly translocated) *V<sub>H</sub>* segments and distribution of repetitive sequences has shown that flanking regions of segments closely related *V<sub>H</sub>* segments do not have a similar distribution to *Alu* and L1 repeats, and that these *V<sub>H</sub>* surrounding regions are not necessarily abundant in repetitive sequences. These studies failed to provide evidence that the homologous recombination mediated by repetitive sequences might be the main driving force of frequent reorganization of the *V<sub>H</sub>* locus. Most *Alu* repeats were reported to have been amplified within the last 60 million years (Shen *et al.*, 1991). In particular, members of the HS subfamily, a subfamily of human *Alu* repeats, have spread after the divergence of chimpanzee and human (within the last 5 million years) (Shen *et al.*, 1991). Because the closely related *V<sub>H</sub>* segments were estimated to have been generated 55 to 322 million years ago (Matsumura *et al.*, 1994), the most likely explanation in this case is that many *Alu* repetitive elements transposed into random positions after *V<sub>H</sub>* reorganization.

## MOUSE *V<sub>H</sub>* LOCUS

### *V<sub>H</sub>* subgroup and family

Murine *V<sub>H</sub>* gene segments were originally divided into three major subgroups on the basis of protein sequences (reviewed by Kabat *et al.*, 1991). These three protein subgroups have been further subdivided to yield 14 distinct *V<sub>H</sub>* families based on nucleotide sequence relatedness according to the definition described for the human *V<sub>H</sub>* family (Brodeur and Riblet, 1984; Winter *et al.*, 1985; Köfler *et al.*, 1992). Human subgroups I, II and III are homologous to mouse subgroups II, I and III, respectively (Table II). Human *V<sub>H</sub>* 4, *V<sub>H</sub>* 2, *V<sub>H</sub>* 1 and *V<sub>H</sub>* 7 families correspond to mouse 3660, 3609, 3558 and *V<sub>H</sub>* 3–8 families, respectively, based on 70% nucleotide sequence homology as described previously (Lee *et al.*, 1987; Berman *et al.*, 1988; Haino *et al.*, 1994). The human *V<sub>H</sub>* 3 family appears to correspond to most of mouse subgroup III families, including 7183, T15, J606, X24, DNA4, CP3 and 3609N. The *V<sub>H</sub>* 6 family is closest to the 3660 family. The human *V<sub>H</sub>* 5 family does not have any mouse counterparts that are more than 70% homologous. Conversely, the mouse Q52 family does not show more than 66% homology with any of the human *V<sub>H</sub>* families. It is interesting to note that the 7183 family members are more than 80% homologous to human *V<sub>H</sub>* 3 family members except for V3-15 and V3-49. The V3-15 and V3-49 sequences are 79 and 82%, respectively, homologous to the V11 sequence of the

S107 family. In addition, almost all human *V<sub>H</sub>* 3 family members are more than 70% homologous to mouse subgroup III families. The results indicate that the *V<sub>H</sub>* 3 family is more conserved than other families between mouse and human, which could be due to some functional constraint.

Since few physical mapping data are available, the estimation of mouse *V<sub>H</sub>* segments is far from accurate. Initial estimations were based on the count of restriction fragments hybridizing to a given *V<sub>H</sub>* probe. Such estimation assumes that each restriction fragment of 10–20 kb may contain a single *V<sub>H</sub>* and overlapping restriction fragments may be negligible. By this approach, the J558 *V<sub>H</sub>* family consisted of 50–100 or more specific hybridizing fragments (Brodeur and Riblet, 1984; Schiff *et al.*, 1985) whereas other families such as S107 have only a few hybridizing fragments (Crews *et al.*, 1981; Brodeur and Riblet, 1984). These approaches have led to estimates of the size of the murine germline *V<sub>H</sub>* repertoire of approximately 100 or so members (Brodeur and Riblet, 1984). A very rough estimate of members belonging to the 14 known *V<sub>H</sub>* families is shown in Table II. However, this quantitative approach may give an underestimate, as suggested by observations that *V<sub>H</sub>* sequences may sometimes be more closely spaced and by the existence of multiple unique *V<sub>H</sub>*-containing restriction fragments of the same size (Bothwell *et al.*, 1981; Slietvitz *et al.*, 1983; Schiff *et al.*, 1985; Berman *et al.*, 1988; Rathbun *et al.*,

Table II *V<sub>H</sub>* classifications and *V<sub>H</sub>* gene repertoire

Mouse <i>V<sub>H</sub></i> families*	Protein subgroup†	Complexity‡	Related human <i>V<sub>H</sub></i> families
Q52 ( <i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 2)	I	15	
3660 ( <i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 3)	I	5–8	<i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 4, <i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 6
3609 ( <i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 8)	I	7–10	<i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 2
CH27 ( <i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 12)	I	1	<i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 4
3558 ( <i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 1)	II	60–1000	<i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 1
<i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 3–8 ( <i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 9)	II	5–7	<i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 7
SM7 ( <i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 14)	II	3–4	<i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 1
X24 ( <i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 4)	III	2	
7183 ( <i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 5)	III	12	
1606 ( <i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 6)	III	10–12	
S107 ( <i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 7)	III	2–4	
MRE-DNA4 ( <i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 10)	III	2–5	<i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 3
CP3 ( <i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 11)	III	1–6	
3609N ( <i>V<sub>H</sub></i> 13)	III	1	

\* *V<sub>H</sub>* gene families 1–7 (Brodeur and Riblet, 1984), 8 and 9 (Winter *et al.*, 1985), 10 (Köfler, 1992), 11 (Reininger *et al.*, 1988), 12 (Pennell *et al.*, 1989), 13 and 14 (Tuttle *et al.*, 1991). A prototype member for each family is given with the family number in parentheses. In this study, *V<sub>H</sub>* families 3609N and SM7 have been tentatively termed *V<sub>H</sub>* 13 and 14, respectively. The families have been organized into three phylogenetically related groups (Tuttle and Riblet, 1988).

† According to Kabat *et al.* (1991).  
‡ Estimated number of *V<sub>H</sub>* genes per family in the germline. For references see footnote\* and Litvin *et al.* (1986), Dziatczak *et al.* (1986), Perlman *et al.* (1984), Sin *et al.* (1987) for *V<sub>H</sub>* 1, 3, 6 and 7, respectively.

1988). Other hybridization-based approaches have included solution hybridization experiments, which suffer from a lack of ideal kinetics when measuring hybridization to a spectrum of partially related sequences (Livant *et al.*, 1986), and plaque hybridization experiments, which determine the number of clones from a given  $V_H$  family relative to single copy sequence clones in a single-genome equivalent of a genomic DNA library (Livant *et al.*, 1986; Berman *et al.*, 1988). The latter approaches have suggested that the murine  $V_H$  locus, at least in some strains, may contain 1000 or more members, most of these being contributed by the exceptionally large J558  $V_H$  family, which in BALB/c mice may contain 500–1000 or more members by itself.

While the size of the  $V_H$  gene repertoire is relatively conserved between different inbred strains of mice, there are still some important inter-strain differences in certain families, particularly J558 (discussed in Meek *et al.*, 1990). The exact number of members in a particular strain is known for some  $V_H$  gene families, and for most others estimates are within a relatively narrow range (Table II). Only the size of the largest family (J558) is still controversial, with estimates varying between 60 (Brodeur and Riblet, 1984) to >1000 (Livant *et al.*, 1986) members. However, since only about 30–50% of adult mitogen-stimulated splenocytes express the J558 family, the actual J558 family size might be closer to 60 than to 1000. Alternatively (or in addition), there may be multiple non-functional or essentially identical J558 family segments, which would explain the relative under-representation of this family in the expressed repertoire.

### $V_H$ segment organization

Murine  $V_H$  families are generally organized into clusters of related  $V_H$  genes. The suggestion that mouse  $V_H$  segments belonging to the same family are clustered was first made by Kemp *et al.* (1981) after they isolated distinct genomic DNA clones, each bearing pairs of highly related  $V_H$  sequences (S107 and J606). Bothwell *et al.* (1981) and Givol *et al.* (1981) reported similar findings for members of the J558 family. So-called deletion-mapping analyses of B cell lines that had rearranged known  $V_H$  segments (Kemp *et al.*, 1981; Rechavi *et al.*, 1982; Reith *et al.*, 1986; Blankenstein and Krawinkel, 1987; Rathbun *et al.*, 1987) were consistent with a clustered organization of  $V_H$  segment family members.  $V_H$  segment analyses of IgH-recombinant mouse strains also indicated a generally clustered organization of  $V_H$  families (Brodeur *et al.*, 1984). However, other studies revealed that several  $V_H$  family members are interspersed (Crews *et al.*, 1981). In particular, pairs of families mapped at both ends of the  $V_H$  locus, namely J558 and 3609 at the 5' end and Q52 and 7183 at the 3' end, were shown to be intermingled extensively with each other (Reith *et al.*, 1986; Blankenstein and Krawinkel, 1987; Rathbun *et al.*, 1987). Furthermore, J558-related segments appear to be dispersed over a wide range in the  $V_H$  locus.

Deletion-mapping analyses together with strain-specific RFLP analyses of  $V_H$  families in recombinant inbred strains were used to order eight  $V_H$  families and

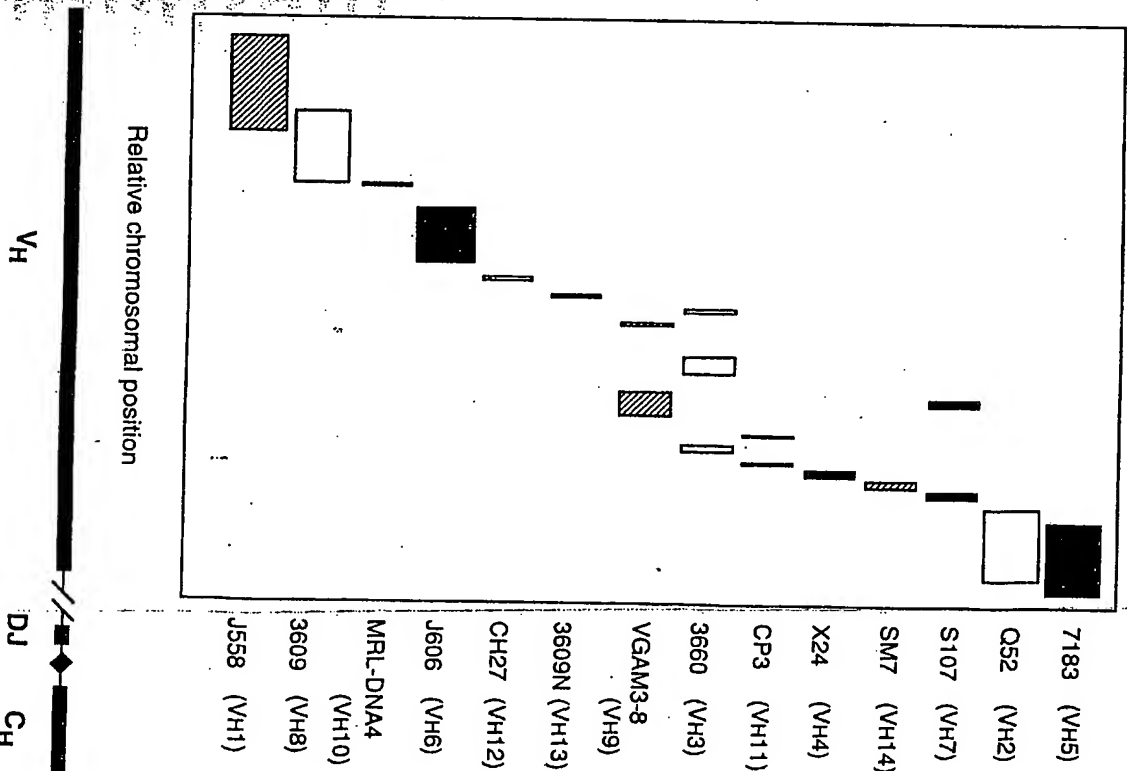


Fig 5. Relative chromosomal position of 14 murine  $V_H$  families. Mapping information of  $V_H$  10, 11, 12, 13 and 14 families is from Meek *et al.* (1990), Pennell *et al.* (1989) and Tutter *et al.* (1991).  $V_H$  families corresponding to  $V_H$  1, 2 and 3 protein subgroups are indicated by open, shaded and filled rectangles, respectively. (Modified from Brodeur *et al.*, 1988.)



generate a map of 5'-(3609) 1606, 3660, X24)-1558-5107-Q52-7183-D<sub>H</sub>-J<sub>H</sub>-3' (Kemp *et al.*, 1981; Rechavi *et al.*, 1982; Brodeur *et al.*, 1984; Mäkelä *et al.*, 1984; Riblet *et al.*, 1987) for the BALB/c mouse strain; the V<sub>H</sub> families in parentheses were not mapped relative to each other. In A/J mice the nine V<sub>H</sub> families have been positioned relative to specific rearranged V<sub>H</sub> genes from the J558 and 3660 V<sub>H</sub> clusters, using deletion mapping, to generate a V<sub>H</sub> map order of 5'-3609-1558-(3606, VGAM3-8, S107)-3660-(X24, Q52, 7183)-D<sub>H</sub>-J<sub>H</sub>-3' (Rathbun *et al.*, 1987); BALB/c and C57BL/6 B-cell lines that rearranged J558 V<sub>H</sub> segments were consistent with the A/J map order. More recently, Brodeur *et al.* (1988) mapped 13 clusters of nine V<sub>H</sub> families utilizing 32 Abelson murine leukaemia virus (A-MuLV)-transformed pre-B cell lines that had undergone VDJ recombination. In these cell lines 51 chromosomes had rearranged and provided useful information for mapping nine V<sub>H</sub> families, which showed that the order is 5'-J558-3609-1606-3660-VGAM3-8-3660-S107-VGAM3-8-3660-X24-S107-Q52-7183-D<sub>H</sub>-J<sub>H</sub>-3'. These authors have also shown that several V<sub>H</sub> segments are split into few clusters as shown in Fig. 5. This map is slightly different from their previous mapping and more similar to the A/J map. The difference could be explained by confusion due to the partially dispersed distribution of large families like J558. A larger number of rearranged chromosomes examined in the study by Brodeur *et al.* (1988) lend weight to their conclusion. Strain polymorphism could be another source of difference. However, as will be discussed below, the general organization of the V<sub>H</sub> locus appears to be more conserved than previously expected among haplotypes.

Subsequently, five more new families were identified and mapped: V<sub>H</sub>10 (Kofler, 1988; Meek *et al.*, 1990), V<sub>H</sub>11 (Reininger *et al.*, 1988; Hardy *et al.*, 1989; Meek *et al.*, 1990), V<sub>H</sub>12 (Pennell *et al.*, 1989), V<sub>H</sub>SM7 (Tutter *et al.*, 1991) and V<sub>H</sub>3609N (Tutter *et al.*, 1991). A summary of these results is shown in Fig. 5. Since Brodeur *et al.* (1988) utilized F<sub>1</sub> mice carrying the Igh<sup>b</sup> and Igh<sup>d</sup> parent haplotypes, they could simultaneously map BALB/c and C57BL haplotypes. These data indicate that the general organization of Igh<sup>b</sup> and Igh<sup>d</sup> haplotypes are almost identical. More limited data for the IgH<sup>b</sup>, IgH<sup>d</sup>, IgH<sup>e</sup> haplotypes are also consistent with the V<sub>H</sub> family positions shown above.

Unfortunately, the resolution of the technique utilized for studying mouse V<sub>H</sub> segment organization is limited. The details of murine V<sub>H</sub> segment organization should be elucidated by PFG mapping and direct-linkage studies using overlapping cosmid, phage or YAC clones, as has been done more extensively for human V<sub>H</sub> families.

## D<sub>H</sub> and J<sub>H</sub> segments

The heavy-chain V<sub>H</sub> gene segments (V<sub>H</sub>, D<sub>H</sub> and J<sub>H</sub>) are arranged in contiguous but separate clusters on chromosome 12 in the mouse genome, although there is no direct physical linkage between V<sub>H</sub> and D<sub>H</sub> segments (Fig. 3). Four J<sub>H</sub> segments lie at several hundred base pair intervals approximately 7 kb upstream of the C<sub>H</sub> gene. The

D<sub>H</sub> segments have been subdivided into three families on the basis of coding and flanking region relatedness (Kurosawa and Tonegawa, 1982). A single DQ52 segment resides about 750 bp 5' of J<sub>H</sub>1; nine DSP2 segments are positioned 10–80 kb upstream of DQ52 (Wood and Tonegawa, 1983). The most 5' DSP2 (DSP2.3) segment is positioned between the two DFL16.1 (in BALB/c) has been identified as the most upstream D<sub>H</sub> segment characterized to date. Recently, a new functional D<sub>H</sub> segment (DST4), which is not related to any of the known D<sub>H</sub> families, was identified and mapped between the 3'-end DSP2 (DSP2.8) and DQ52 segments (Feeney and Riblet, 1993). All known murine V<sub>H</sub> segments are located upstream of DFL16.1 and to date there is no evidence for additional D<sub>H</sub> segments further upstream (within the V<sub>H</sub> locus) or elsewhere in the genome (Ichihara *et al.*, 1989; Feeney and Riblet, 1993).

## V<sub>H</sub> segment usage and repertoire formation

The first evidence that the J<sub>H</sub>-proximal V<sub>H</sub> (7183) is preferentially used came from studies on nine A-MuLV-transformed pre-B lines that were supposed to be generated without selection of surface Ig as pre-B cells do not produce L chains and no surface Ig. Yancopoulos *et al.* (1984) examined nine A-MuLV-transformed BALB/c fetal liver-derived pre-B cell lines and documented 12 V<sub>H</sub>D<sub>H</sub>J<sub>H</sub> rearrangements in these cell lines, of which 11 involved the 7183 family. Similar results were obtained by Perlmuter *et al.* (1985), who found that seven of nine fetal liver hybridomas express the 7183 family. In contrast to initial reports, several groups (Reith *et al.*, 1986; Lawler *et al.*, 1987; Sugiyama *et al.*, 1987; Osman *et al.*, 1988) have observed the preferential utilization of both 7183 and Q52 family members in pre-B cells. In particular analyses of A-MuLV-transformed pre-B lines that actively continued V<sub>H</sub> to D<sub>H</sub>J<sub>H</sub> joining in culture provided a useful system for the study of V<sub>H</sub> utilization in the absence of selection by the environment. Such lines from several different mouse strains all showed frequent utilization of the J<sub>H</sub>-proximal V<sub>H</sub> (Reith *et al.*, 1986). Taken together, the findings (Reith *et al.*, 1986; Rathbun *et al.*, 1987) that 7183 and Q52 family members are interspersed in a variety of haplotypes, and that both families are preferentially utilized in pre-B cells, support the suggestion of Yancopoulos *et al.* (1984) of a position-dependent rearrangement of V<sub>H</sub> segments in early ontogeny. This view, however, is not generally accepted and a locus outside of the V<sub>H</sub> region has been suggested as being responsible for V<sub>H</sub> gene family utilization (Wu and Paige, 1988; Atkinson *et al.*, 1991). Unfortunately, no parallel results were obtained in human V<sub>H</sub> usage except that the J<sub>H</sub>-proximal V<sub>H</sub> (i.e. V6-1) is preferentially used in early ontogeny (Berman *et al.*, 1991). The difference will be resolved only when the precise physical map of the murine V<sub>H</sub> locus is available.

In contrast to V<sub>H</sub> segments, V<sub>κ</sub> segment rearrangement in the newly generated repertoire appears position independent, although not entirely stochastic (Lawler *et al.*, 1989). In adult bone marrow-derived pre-B cell lines, a strong bias for rearrangement of genes from the V<sub>κ</sub>4/5 family has been reported (Kallied and Brodeur, 1990).

Thus, primary V-gene selection might be biased in differentiating pre-B cells at all stages of ontogeny, although the as yet unidentified molecular mechanisms acting on the  $V_H$  and  $V_L$  loci might be distinct.

In contrast to the results from pre-B cell lines, hybridomas or B-cell colonies derived from bacterial lipopolysaccharide (LPS)-activated spleen cells of adult mice had 'random' utilization of  $V_H$  families; thus, family representation depended on the family complexity (Dildrop *et al.*, 1985; Schulze and Kelsöe, 1987). Assays of  $V_H$  utilization patterns in RNA prepared from organs of normal B-cell differentiation (neonatal liver versus adult spleen) indicate contrasting  $V_H$  usage profiles (non-random versus random) in agreement with studies using cell lines. Several other groups have also reported that  $V_H$  family utilization is normalized in the adult peripheral repertoire and roughly corresponds to the germine complexity of these families (Dildrop *et al.*, 1985; Schulze and Kelsöe, 1987; Jeong and Teale, 1988; Yancopoulos *et al.*, 1988). The issue is, however, still controversial: non-random  $V_H$  gene expression in the peripheral repertoire was shown in at least one report (Lawler *et al.*, 1987), and suggested on the basis of inter-strain repertoire comparisons in others (Jeong *et al.*, 1988; Sheehan and Brodeur, 1989). Moreover, Wu and Paige (1986) did not find significant differences between newly generated and functional peripheral repertoires.

## $C_H$ LOCUS

### Structure of $C_H$ genes

All the human and murine  $C_H$  genes have been isolated and sequenced completely; the references for the complete  $C_H$  gene sequences are summarized in Table III. The mouse  $C_H$  genes for secretory forms are composed of three ( $\alpha$ ) or four ( $\mu$ ,  $\delta$ ,  $\gamma$  and  $\epsilon$ ) exons, each encoding a functional unit of the H chain, namely a domain (Edelman *et al.*, 1969) or hinge region. In addition, one ( $\alpha$ ) or two (other) separate exons encode the hydrophobic transmembrane and short intracytoplasmic segments that are used for a membrane-form Ig. The  $C_H$  genes are exceptional because the hinge region is encoded by the  $C_H2$  exon. The other exception is the  $C_\delta$  gene, which has two additional exons, the most 3' of which encodes a C-terminal tail for the secretory form 1 kb 5' to the membrane exons. The size of each  $C_H$  exon is similar to that of the  $C_L$  exon, suggesting that the  $C_H$  gene evolved by duplication of a primordial single exon gene like the  $C_L$  gene. Such exon-intron organization of the  $C_H$  gene is consistent with the domain hypothesis that the H-chain protein consists of a tandem array of three or four functional units (Edelman *et al.*, 1969). The total length of each  $C_H$  gene is therefore variable, ranging from 3 to 7 kb.

Expression of the membrane exons is controlled by differential splicing. Transcripts of the membrane exons are spliced to the domain exons nearest the 3' end

**Table III** References for complete nucleotide sequences of  $C_H$  genes\*

Genes	Reference
<b>Mouse</b>	
$\mu$	Kawakami <i>et al.</i> (1980); Rogers <i>et al.</i> (1980)
$\delta$	Tucker <i>et al.</i> (1980); Cheng <i>et al.</i> (1982)
$\gamma 1$	Honjo <i>et al.</i> (1979); Tyler <i>et al.</i> (1982)
$\gamma 2a$	Yamawaki-Kataoka <i>et al.</i> (1981, 1982)
$\gamma 2b$	Yamawaki-Kataoka <i>et al.</i> (1980, 1982)
$\gamma 3$	Wels <i>et al.</i> (1984); Komaromy <i>et al.</i> (1983)
$\epsilon$	Ishida <i>et al.</i> (1982); Liu <i>et al.</i> (1982)
$\alpha$	Tucker <i>et al.</i> (1981); Word <i>et al.</i> (1983)
<b>Human</b>	
$\delta$	Milstein <i>et al.</i> (1984); White <i>et al.</i> (1985)
$\gamma 1$	Ellison <i>et al.</i> (1982)
$\gamma 2$	Ellison and Hood (1982)
$\gamma 3$	Huck <i>et al.</i> (1986)
$\gamma 4$	Ellison <i>et al.</i> (1981)
$\gamma 7$	Bensmana <i>et al.</i> (1988)
$\epsilon 3, \epsilon 2, \epsilon 3$	Max <i>et al.</i> (1982); Ueda <i>et al.</i> (1982)
$\alpha 1, \alpha 2$	Flanagan <i>et al.</i> (1984)

\* Corrected sequences are found in Kabat *et al.* (1991).

by removing the last few residues of the secreted Ig tail. All the membrane segments except  $C_\alpha$  are encoded by two exons. The hydrophobic transmembrane segment of 26 residues is relatively conserved among all the H chains, suggesting the possibility that membrane-form Ig is anchored by a common membrane protein (Yamawaki-Kataoka *et al.*, 1982). Since the intracytoplasmic segments of the membrane-form Ig are too short (27 residues for  $C_\gamma$  and  $C_\epsilon$  chains, 14 residues for  $C_\mu$  and two residues for  $C_\delta$  and  $C_\alpha$ ) to catalyse any enzymic activity such as phosphorylation, transduction of the triggering signal of the antigen-antibody interaction may require involvement of at least one other protein. This hypothesis has been verified by subsequent identification of Ig $\alpha$  and Ig $\beta$  proteins (see Chapter 6).

Allotypes of Ig are mostly explained by polymorphism in  $C_H$  regions. Allotypes were originally defined by antigenic differences in Ig between different strains of mice and it is not always clear which difference in the amino acid sequence is responsible for a particular allotype defined by an antibody. The typical cases are the comparison of a and b haplotypes of the  $C_{H2a}$  and  $C_{H2b}$  genes, which revealed differences in 54 and 4 residues, respectively (Ollo and Rougeon, 1982, 1983). Further studies using *in vitro* mutagenesis and expression of mutants in culture cells will define polymorphic differences responsible for antigenicity for various antibodies. The Am determinants in human and allotypic determinants in rabbit IgG were assigned to one or a few residue differences (Flanagan *et al.*, 1984; Martens *et al.*, 1984).

## Organization of $C_H$ genes

The mouse  $C_H$  gene locus, which is mapped to chromosome 12 (D'eustachio *et al.*, 1980), consists of eight genes that cluster in a 200 kb region (Shimizu *et al.*, 1982a). The order of the mouse  $C_H$  genes, 5'-J<sub>H</sub>-(6.5 kb)-C<sub>H</sub>-(4.5 kb)-C<sub>H</sub>-(55 kb)-C<sub>H</sub>-(34 kb)-C<sub>H</sub>-(21 kb)-C<sub>H</sub>-(15 kb)-C<sub>H</sub>-(14 kb)-C<sub>H</sub>-(12 kb)-C<sub>H</sub>-(3') (Shimizu *et al.*, 1982a), is consistent with the order proposed by the deletion profile of  $C_H$  genes in myelomas producing different Ig classes (Honjo and Kataoka, 1978). Unlike the  $C_H$  gene (Miller *et al.*, 1982), the  $C_H$  genes share one set of J<sub>H</sub> segments (Shimizu *et al.*, 1982a), which allows them to retain the same V<sub>H</sub> gene during class switching. The mouse genome does not contain any well-conserved pseudogene of the  $C_H$  genes.

The general organization of the  $C_H$  gene locus is similar among laboratory strain mice, though there are many polymorphic differences. Some wild mice, however, have duplicated  $C_{H2}$  genes (Shimizu *et al.*, 1982b; Fukui *et al.*, 1984). Of 31 Japanese and Chinese wild mice screened 17 had similar duplication, suggesting that this duplication took place relatively recently.

The human  $C_H$  gene family is mapped to the q32 band of chromosome 14 (Kirsch *et al.*, 1982) and consists of nine functional genes and two pseudogenes. The organization of the human  $C_H$  gene cluster is different from that of mouse in that the C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> unit is duplicated downstream of the C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> genes. In addition, a pseudo C<sub>4</sub> gene has been genetically mapped between the duplication unit (Bech-Hansen *et al.*, 1983). The 5' C<sub>4</sub> or C<sub>2</sub> gene is a truncated pseudogene. The other pseudogene C<sub>3</sub> is processed and translocated to chromosome 9 (Battey *et al.*, 1982). The organization of the human  $C_H$  locus is as follows: 5'-J<sub>H</sub>-(8 kb)-C<sub>H</sub>-(5 kb)-C<sub>H</sub>-(60 kb)-C<sub>H</sub>-(26 kb)-C<sub>H</sub>-(19 kb)-C<sub>H</sub>-(13 kb)-C<sub>H</sub>-(35 kb)-ψC<sub>H</sub>-(45 kb)-C<sub>H</sub>-(18 kb)-C<sub>H</sub>-(23 kb)-C<sub>H</sub>-(10 kb)-C<sub>H</sub>-(2-3') (Ravetch *et al.*, 1981; Flanagan and Rabbits, 1982; Bottaro *et al.*, 1989; Holter *et al.*, 1989).

Several deletion mutations in the  $C_H$  gene locus have been reported: deleted regions are C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> (Lefranc *et al.*, 1982), C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> (Migone *et al.*, 1984) or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> (Migone *et al.*, 1984). It is rather surprising that individuals with deletions of several  $C_H$  genes have not shown any severe clinical symptoms, suggesting that C<sub>1</sub> and C<sub>2</sub> subclass genes are capable of substituting for each other and that the C<sub>3</sub> genes might not be obligatory but might facilitate efficient protection from parasite infection.

## Other mammals

Rat  $C_H$  gene organization was strikingly homologous to that of mouse. The order of the  $C_H$  genes is 5'-J<sub>H</sub>-C<sub>H</sub>-(C<sub>2</sub>/C<sub>2a</sub>)-C<sub>H</sub>-(C<sub>2b</sub>-C<sub>2c</sub>-3') (However, rat C<sub>2a</sub> and C<sub>1</sub> genes, which are very similar to each other, are most homologous to the mouse C<sub>1</sub> gene. Rat C<sub>2b</sub> gene is most homologous to mouse C<sub>2b</sub> and C<sub>2a</sub> genes (Brüggenmann *et al.*, 1986). These results suggest that although  $C_H$  loci of these species have the same number of C<sub>1</sub> genes, these C<sub>1</sub> genes have evolved very dynamically by duplication (and deletion) as shown in wild mouse (Shimizu *et al.*,

1982b; Fukui *et al.*, 1984). The organization of rabbit Ig genes is described in detail in Chapter 13.

## Acknowledgements

We are grateful to Ms Y. Nakamura for her assistance in preparation of the manuscript. This work was supported in part by grants from Creative Basic Research (Human Genome Program) of the Ministry of Education, Science and Culture of Japan and from the Science and Technology Agency of Japan. This work was done while TH was a Fogarty scholar-in-residence at National Institute of Health, USA.

## REFERENCES

- Atkinson, M.J., Michnick, D.A., Paige, C.J. and Wu, G.E. (1991). *J. Immunol.* **146**, 2805-2812.
- Ballard, D.W. and Bothwell, A. (1986). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **83**, 9626-9630.
- Bathey, J., Max, E.E., McBride, W.O., Swan, D. and Leder, P. (1982). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **79**, 5956-5960.
- Bech-Hansen, N.T., Linsley, P.S. and Cox, D.W. (1983). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **80**, 6952-6956.
- Becker, R.S. and Knight, K.L. (1990). *Cell* **63**, 987-997.
- Bensmana, M., Huc, S., Lefranc, G. and Lefranc, M.-P. (1988). *Nucleic Acids Res.* **16**, 3108.
- Berman, J.E., Mellis, S.J., Pollock, R., Smith, C.L., Suh, H., Heinke, B., Kowal, C., Surti, U., Chess, L., Cantor, C.R. and Alt, F.W. (1988). *EMBO J.* **7**, 727-738.
- Berman, J.E., Nickerson, K.G., Pollock, R.R., Barth, J.E., Schurman, R.K.B., Knowles, D.M., Chess, L. and Alt, F.W. (1991). *Eur. J. Immunol.* **21**, 1311-1314.
- Blankenstein, T. and Krawinkel, U. (1987). *Eur. J. Immunol.* **17**, 1351-1357.
- Botnall, A.L.M., Paskind, M., Reh, M., Imanishi-Kari, T., Rajewsky, K. and Baltimore, D. (1981). *Cell* **24**, 625-637.
- Bottaro, A., de Marchi, M., Migone, N. and Carbonara, A.O. (1989). *Genomics* **4**, 505-508.
- Brodeur, P.H. and Riblet, R. (1984). *Eur. J. Immunol.* **14**, 922-930.
- Brodeur, P.H., Thompson, M.A. and Riblet, R. (1984). In 'Regulation of the Immune System' (H. Cantor, L. Chess and E. Sercarz, eds), pp. 445-453. Alan R. Liss, New York.
- Brodeur, P.H., Osman, G.E., Mackle, J.J. and Lalor, T.M. (1988). *J. Exp. Med.* **168**, 2261-2278.
- Brüggenmann, M., Frey, J., Diamond, A., Howard, J., Cobbold, S. and Waldmann, H. (1986). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **83**, 6075-6079.
- Buluwela, L. and Rabbits, T.H. (1988). *Eur. J. Immunol.* **18**, 1843-1845.
- Buluwela, L., Albertson, D.G., Sherrington, P., Rabbits, P.H., Spur, N. and Rabbits, T.H. (1988). *EMBO J.* **7**, 2003-2010.
- Caines, E., Kwong, P.C., Misenet, V., Ip, P., Bell, D.A. and Simionovitch, K.A. (1989). *J. Immunol.* **143**, 683-691.
- Cheng, H.-L., Blumberg, P.M., Fitzmaurice, L., Mustiński, J.F. and Tucker, P.W. (1982). *Nature* **296**, 410-415.
- Cherif, D. and Berger, R. (1990). *Genes, Chromosomes and Cancer* **2**, 103-108.
- Chung, J.H., Siebenlist, U., Morton, C.C. and Leder, P. (1984). *Fed. Proc.* **43**, 1486.
- Cook, G., Tomlinson, I.M., Walter, G., Rietman, H., Carter, N.P., Buluwela, L., Winter, G. and Rabbits, T.H. (1994). *Nature Genet.* **7**, 162-168.
- Crews, S., Griffin, J., Huang, H., Calame, K. and Hood, L. (1981). *Cell* **25**, 59-66.
- Croce, C.M., Sander, M., Marchis, J., Ciccarel, L., D'Arcora, G.G., Dolby, T.W. and Koprowski, H. (1979). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **76**, 3416-3419.
- Cusiner, A.M., Gaubier, L., Boublil, L., Fougereau, M. and Tommelle, C. (1993). *Eur. J. Immunol.* **23**, 110-118.



- Destimonian, H., Schwartz, R.S., Barrett, K.J. and Stoller, B.D. (1987). *J. Immunol.* **139**, 2496-2501.
- Devistachio, P., Pavtceva, D., Marcu, K. and Radda, F.H. (1980). *J. Exp. Med.* **151**, 1545-1550.
- Devlin, R.H., Deeb, S., Brunnell, J. and Hayden, M.R. (1990). *Am. J. Hum. Genet.* **46**, 1112-1119.
- Dillrop, R., Krawinkel, U., Winter, E. and Rajewsky, K. (1983). *Eur. J. Immunol.* **13**, 1154-1156.
- Dzierzak, E.A., Janeway, C.A. Jr, Richard, N. and Bothwell, A. (1986). *J. Immunol.* **136**, 1864-1870.
- Eden, C. and Calame, K. (1987). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **84**, 7634-7638.
- Erdman, G.M., Cunningham, B.A., Gall, W.E., Gottlieb, P.D., Rutschmeyer, U. and Waxdal, M.J. (1969). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **63**, 78-85.
- Ellison, J. and Hood, L. (1982). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **79**, 1984-1988.
- Ellison, J., Burburn, J. and Hood, L. (1981). *DNA* **1**, 11-18.
- Ellison, J., Benson, B.J. and Hood, L.E. (1982). *Nucleic Acids Res.* **10**, 4071-4079.
- Feeney, A.J. and Riblet, R. (1993). *Immunogenetics* **37**, 217-221.
- Flanagan, J.G. and Rabbits, T.H. (1982). *Nature* **300**, 709-713.
- Flanagan, J.G., Lefranc, M.-P. and Rabbits, T.H. (1984). *Cell* **36**, 681-688.
- Foot, J. and Winter, G. (1992). *J. Mol. Biol.* **224**, 487-499.
- Fukui, K., Hamaguchi, Y., Shimizu, A., Nakai, S., Moriwaki, K., Wang, C.H. and Honjo, T. (1984). *J. Mol. Cell. Immunol.* **1**, 321-330.
- Givol, D., Zakut, R., Efron, K., Rechavi, G., Ram, D. and Cohen, J.B. (1981). *Nature* **292**, 426-430.
- Green, L.L., Hardy, M.C., Maynard-Curtis, C.E., Tsuda, H., Louie, D.M., Mendez, M.J., Abderrahim, H., Noguchi, M., Smith, D.H., Zeng, Y., David, N.E., Sasaki, H., Garza, D., Brenner, D.G., Hales, J.F., McGuinness, R.P., Capon, D.J., Klappholz, S. and Jakobovits, A. (1994). *Nature Genet.* **7**, 13-21.
- Haino, M., Hayashida, H., Miyata, T., Shin, E.K., Matsuda, F., Nagaoaka, H., Matsumura, R., Takaishi, S., Fukita, Y., Fujikura, J. and Honjo, T. (1994). *J. Biol. Chem.* **269**, 2619-2626.
- Hardy, R.R., Carmack, C.E., Shinton, S.A., Riblet, R.J. and Hayakawa, K. (1989). *J. Immunol.* **142**, 3643-3651.
- Hashimoto, L.L., Walter, M.A., Cox, D.W. and Ebers, G.C. (1993). *J. Neuroimmunol.* **44**, 77-83.
- Hayashida, H. and Miyata, T. (1983). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **80**, 2671-2675.
- Holter, M.H., Walter, M.A. and Cox, D.W. (1989). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **86**, 5567-5571.
- Honjo, T. and Kanaoka, T. (1978). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **75**, 2140-2144.
- Honjo, T., Obara, M., Yamawaki-Kaneko, Y., Kanaoka, T., Takahashi, N. and Mano, Y. (1979). *Cell* **18**, 559-568.
- Huck, S., Crawford, D.H., Lefranc, M.-P. and Lefranc, G. (1986). *Nucleic Acids Res.* **14**, 1779-1789.
- Hyrien, O., Debatuse, M., Buttin, G. and Robert de Saint Vincent, B. (1987). *EMBO J.* **6**, 2401-2408.
- Ichihara, Y., Abe, M., Yasui, H., Matsubara, H. and Kurosawa, Y. (1988a). *Eur. J. Immunol.* **18**, 649-652.
- Ichihara, Y., Matsubara, H. and Kurosawa, Y. (1988b). *EMBO J.* **7**, 4141-4150.
- Ichihara, Y., Hayashida, H., Miyazawa, S. and Kurosawa, Y. (1989). *Eur. J. Immunol.* **19**, 1849-1854.
- Ishida, N., Ueda, S., Hayashida, H., Miyata, T. and Honjo, T. (1982). *EMBO J.* **1**, 1117-1123.
- Jeong, H.D. and Teale, J.M. (1988). *J. Exp. Med.* **168**, 589-603.
- Jeong, H.D., Komisar, J.L., Kraig, E. and Teale, J.M. (1988). *J. Immunol.* **140**, 2436-2441.
- Kabat, E.A., Wu, T.T., Perry, H.M., Gottesman, K.S. and Foeller, C. (1991). 'Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest', 5th edn. NIH publications, Washington DC.
- Kalied, S.L. and Brodeur, P.H. (1990). *J. Exp. Med.* **172**, 559-566.
- Kawakami, T., Takahashi, N. and Honjo, T. (1980). *Nucleic Acids Res.* **8**, 3933-3945.
- Kentler, L., Schneider, E., Müller, M.M., Matthias, P. and Schaffner, W. (1989). *EMBO J.* **8**, 2001-2008.
- Kemp, D.J., Tyler, B., Bernard, O., Gough, N., Geroldakis, S., Adams, J.M. and Cory, S. (1981). *J. Mol. Appl. Genet.* **1**, 245-261.
- Kirkham, P.M. and Schroeder, H.W. Jr (1994). *Semin. Immunol.* **6**, 347-360.
- Kirsch, I.R., Morton, C.C., Nakahara, K. and Leder, P. (1982). *Science* **216**, 301-303.
- Kodaira, M., Kinashi, T., Umemura, I., Matsuda, F., Noma, T., Ono, Y. and Honjo, T. (1986). *J. Mol. Biol.* **190**, 529-541.
- Koffler, R. (1988). *J. Immunol.* **140**, 4031-4034.
- Koffler, R., Geley, S., Koffler, H. and Helmborg, A. (1992). *Immunol. Rev.* **128**, 5-21.
- Komarov, M., Clayton, L., Rogers, S., Robertson, S., Kettman, J. and Wall, R. (1983). *Nucleic Acids Res.* **11**, 6775-6785.
- Kurosawa, Y. and Tonegawa, S. (1982). *J. Exp. Med.* **155**, 201-218.
- Lawler, A.M., Lin, P.S. and Gearhart, P.J. (1987). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **84**, 2454-2458.
- Lawler, A.M., Kearney, J.F., Knehl, M. and Gearhart, P.J. (1989). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **86**, 6744-6748.
- Lee, K.H., Matsuda, F., Kinashi, T., Kodaira, M. and Honjo, T. (1987). *J. Mol. Biol.* **195**, 761-768.
- Lefranc, M.-P., Lefranc, G. and Rabbits, T.H. (1982). *Nature* **300**, 760-762.
- Lin, C.-P., Tucker, P.W., Mushinski, G.F. and Blattner, F.R. (1980). *Science* **209**, 1348-1353.
- Lin, F.-T., Albrand, K., Suchliffe, J.G. and Kaiz, D.H. (1982). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **79**, 7852-7856.
- Livnat, D., Blatt, C. and Hood, L. (1986). *Cell* **47**, 461-470.
- Milkeš, O., Seppälä, I.J.T., Pekkonen, J., Kaartinen, M., Caiznave, P.A. and Gefter, M.L. (1984). *Ann. Immunol. (Paris)* **135C**, 169-173.
- Martens, C.L., Currier, S.J. and Knight, K.L. (1984). *J. Immunol.* **133**, 1022-1027.
- Matsuda, F., Lee, K.H., Nakai, S., Sato, T., Kodaira, M., Zong, S.Q., Ohno, H., Fukuhara, S. and Honjo, T. (1988). *EMBO J.* **7**, 1047-1051.
- Matsuda, F., Shin, E.K., Hirabayashi, Y., Nagaoaka, H., Yoshida, M.C., Zong, S.Q. and Honjo, T. (1990). *EMBO J.* **9**, 2501-2506.
- Matsuda, F., Shin, E.K., Nagaoaka, H., Matsumura, R., Haino, M., Fukita, Y., Takaishi, S., Inai, T., Riley, J.H., Anand, R., Soeda, E. and Honjo, T. (1993). *Nature Genet.* **3**, 88-94.
- Matsumura, R., Matsuda, F., Nagaoaka, H., Shin, E.K., Fukita, Y., Haino, M., Fujikura, J. and Honjo, T. (1994). *J. Immunol.* **152**, 660-666.
- Max, E.E., Battery, J., Mey, R., Kirsch, I.R. and Leder, P. (1982). *Cell* **29**, 691-699.
- Meek, K., Rathbun, G., Reininger, L., Jaron, J.C., Koffler, R., Tucker, P.W. and Capra, J.D. (1990). *Mol. Immunol.* **27**, 1073-1081.
- Migone, N., Oliviero, S., de Lange, G., Delacour, D.L., Boeschis, D., Altmann, F., Silengo, L., DeMarchi, M. and Carbone, A.O. (1984). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **81**, 5811-5815.
- Müller, J., Selting, E. and Storb, U. (1982). *Nature* **295**, 428-430.
- Millstein, C.P., Deverson, E.V. and Rabbits, T.H. (1984). *Nucleic Acids Res.* **12**, 6523-6535.
- Miyata, T., Yasunaga, T. and Nishida, T. (1980). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **77**, 7328-7332.
- Nagaoaka, H., Ozawa, K., Matsuda, F., Hayashida, H., Matsumura, R., Haino, M., Shin, E.K., Fukita, Y., Inai, T., Anand, R., Yokoyama, K., Eki, T., Soeda, E. and Honjo, T. (1990). *Genomics* **22**, 189-197.
- Okamura, K., Ishiguro, H., Ichihara, Y. and Kurosawa, Y. (1993). *Mol. Immunol.* **30**, 461-467.
- Olla, R. and Rougeon, F. (1982). *Nature* **296**, 761-763.
- Olla, R. and Rougeon, F. (1983). *Cell* **32**, 515-523.
- Osman, G.E., Worts, H.H. and Brodeur, P.H. (1988). *J. Exp. Med.* **168**, 2023-2030.
- Pascual, V., Randen, L., Thompson, K., Sloud, M., Forre, O., Narvig, J. and Capra, J.D. (1990). *J. Clin. Invest.* **86**, 1320-1328.
- Pascual, V., Verkuysse, L., Cassey, M.L. and Capra, J.D. (1993). *J. Immunol.* **151**, 4164-4172.
- Pennell, C.A., Sheehan, K.M., Brodeur, P.H. and Clarke, S.H. (1989). *Eur. J. Immunol.* **19**, 2115-2121.
- Petrumer, R.M., Klotz, J.L., Bond, M.W., Nuhn, M., Davie, J.M. and Hood, L. (1984). *J. Exp. Med.* **159**, 179-192.
- Petrumer, R.M., Kearney, J.F., Chang, S.P. and Hood, L. (1985). *Science* **227**, 1597-1601.
- Rathbun, G.A., Capra, J.D. and Tucker, P.W. (1987). *EMBO J.* **6**, 2931-2937.
- Rathbun, G.A., Orai, F., Milner, E.C.B., Capra, J.D. and Tucker, P.W. (1988). *J. Mol. Biol.* **202**, 383-395.
- Revetch, I.V., Siebenlist, U., Korsmeyer, S., Waldmann, T. and Leder, P. (1981). *Cell* **27**, 583-591.
- Raynaud, C.-A., Augues, V., Grimal, H. and Weill, J.C. (1987). *Cell* **48**, 379-388.
- Reich, G., Bieatz, B., Ram, D., Ben-Neriah, Y., Cohen, J.B., Zakut, R. and Givol, D. (1982). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **79**, 4405-4409.
- Reininger, L., Kauschik, A., Inai, S. and Jaron, J.C. (1988). *Eur. J. Immunol.* **18**, 1571-1576.
- Reib, M., Jackson, N. and Alt, F.W. (1986). *EMBO J.* **5**, 2131-2138.

- Riblet, R., Brodeur, P., Tutter, A. and Tompkins, M.A. (1987). In 'Evolution and Vertebrate Immunity: The Antigen Receptor and MHC Gene Families' (G. Kelsae and D.H. Schultze, eds), p. 53. University of Texas, Austin.
- Rogers, J., Early, P., Carter, C., Calame, K., Bond, M., Hood, L. and Wall, R. (1980). *Cell* **20**, 303-312.
- Sanz, I., Dang, H., Takei, M., Tatal, N. and Capra, J.D. (1989). *J. Immunol.* **142**, 883-887.
- Sasso, E.H., Willems van Dijk, K., Bull, A.P. and Milner, E.C.B. (1993). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **89**, 10430-10434.
- Sato, T., Matsuda, F., Lee, K.H., Shin, E.K. and Honjo, T. (1988). *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* **154**, 265-271.
- Schiff, C., Mihli, M. and Fougereau, M. (1985). *EMBO J.* **2**, 1225-1330.
- Schroeder, H.W., Jr and Wang, J.Y. (1990). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **87**, 6146-6150.
- Schroeder, H.W., Jr, Hillson, J.L. and Perlmuter, R.M. (1987). *Science* **238**, 791-793.
- Schroeder, H.W., Jr, Walter, M.A., Hofker, M.H., Ebens, A., Willems van Dijk, K., Liao, L.C., Cox, D.W., Milner, E.C.B. and Perlmuter, R.M. (1988). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **85**, 8196-8200.
- Schroeder, H.W., Jr, Hillson, J.L. and Perlmuter, R.M. (1990). *Int. Immunol.* **20**, 41-50.
- Schulze, D.H. and Kelsae, G. (1987). *J. Exp. Med.* **166**, 163-172.
- Schwartz, R.S. and Stoller, B.D. (1987). *J. Exp. Med.* **166**, 163-172.
- Sheehan, K.M. and Brodeur, P.H. (1989). *EMBO J.* **8**, 2313-2320.
- Shen, A., Humphries, C., Tucker, P. and Blattner, F. (1987). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **84**, 8563-8567.
- Shen, M.R., Batzer, M.A. and Deininger, P.L. (1991). *J. Mol. Evol.* **33**, 311-320.
- Shimizu, A., Takahashi, N., Yaotani, Y. and Honjo, T. (1982a). *Cell* **28**, 499-506.
- Shimizu, A., Hamaguchi, Y., Yaotani, Y., Moriwaki, K., Kondo, S. and Honjo, T. (1982b). *Nature* **298**, 82-84.
- Shin, E.K., Matsuda, F., Nagao, H., Fukita, Y., Imai, T., Yokoyama, K., Soeda, E. and Honjo, T. (1991). *EMBO J.* **10**, 3641-3645.
- Shin, E.K., Matsuda, F., Ozaki, S., Kunagai, S., Olerup, O., Strom, H., Melchior, I. and Honjo, T. (1993a). *Immunogenetics* **38**, 304-306.
- Shin, E.K., Matsuda, F., Fujikura, J., Akamizu, T., Sugawara, H., Mori, T. and Honjo, T. (1993b). *Eur. J. Immunol.* **23**, 2365-2367.
- Siebert, U., Ravetch, J.V., Korsmeyer, S., Waldmann, T. and Leder, P. (1981). *Nature* **294**, 631-635.
- Siebert, M., Huang, S.Y. and Gelfand, M.L. (1983). *Eur. J. Immunol.* **13**, 123-132.
- Siu, G., Springer, E.A., Huang, H.V., Hopd, L.E. and Crews, S.T. (1987). *J. Immunol.* **138**, 4466-4471.
- Soumya, D., Weingartner, B. and Grunzmann, R. (1989). *Nucleic Acids Res.* **17**, 1267.
- Sugiyama, H., Maeda, T., Tanai, Y., Miyake, S., Oka, Y., Komori, T., Ogawa, H., Soma, T., Minami, Y., Sakao, N. and Kishimoto, S. (1987). *J. Exp. Med.* **166**, 607-612.
- Taylor, L.D., Carmack, C.E., Huszar, D., Higgins, K.M., Mashayekh, R., Sequar, G., Schramm, S.R., Kuo, C.C., O'Donnell, S.L., Kay, R.M., Woodhouse, C.S. and Lomberg, N. (1994). *Int. Immunol.* **6**, 579-591.
- Tompkins, I.M., Walter, G., Marks, J.D., Llewellyn, M.B. and Winter, G. (1992). *J. Mol. Biol.* **227**, 776-798.
- Tompkins, I.M., Cook, G.P., Carter, N.P., Eliaswarapu, R., Smith, S., Walter, G., Buluwela, L., Rabbits, T.H. and Winter, G. (1994). *Hum. Mol. Genet.* **3**, 856-860.
- Tompkins, C.B. and Neiman, P.E. (1987). *Cell* **48**, 369-378.
- Tucker, P.W., Liu, C.P., Mushinski, J.F. and Blattner, F.R. (1980). *Science* **209**, 1353-1360.
- Tucker, P.W., Slighion, J.L. and Blattner, F.R. (1981). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **78**, 7684-7688.
- Tutter, A. and Riblet, R. (1988). *Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol.* **137**, 107-115.
- Tutter, A., Brodeur, P., Shlomchik, M. and Riblet, R. (1991). *J. Immunol.* **147**, 3215-3223.
- Tyler, B.M., Cowman, A.F., Genoudakis, S.D., Adams, J.M. and Bernerd, O. (1982). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **79**, 2008-2012.
- Ueda, S., Nakai, S., Nishida, Y., Hisajima, H. and Honjo, T. (1982). *EMBO J.* **1**, 1539-1544.
- van Dijk, K.W., Moriai, F., Kirkham, P.M., Schroeder, H.W. and Milner, E.C.B. (1993). *Eur. J. Immunol.* **23**, 832-839.
- Walter, G., Tompkins, I.M., Cook, G.P., Winter, G., Rabbits, T.H. and Dear, P.H. (1993). *Nucleic Acids Res.* **21**, 4524-4529.
- Walter, M.A., Surti, U., Hofker, M.H. and Cox, D.W. (1990). *EMBO J.* **9**, 3303-3313.
- Walter, M.A., Dorsch, H.M. and Cox, D.W. (1991a). *J. Exp. Med.* **174**, 335-349.
- Walter, M.A., Gibson, W.T., Ebens, G.C. and Cox, D.W. (1991b). *J. Clin. Invest.* **87**, 1266-1273.
- Wels, J.A., Word, C.J., Rimm, D., Der-Balan, G.P., Martinez, H.M., Tucker, P.W. and Blattner, F.R. (1984). *EMBO J.* **3**, 2041-2046.
- White, M.B., Shen, A.W., Word, J.C., Tucker, P.W. and Blattner, F.R. (1985). *Science* **228**, 733-737.
- Winter, E., Radbruch, A. and Krawinkel, U. (1985). *EMBO J.* **4**, 2861-2867.
- Wood, C. and Tonegawa, S. (1983). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **80**, 3030-3034.
- Word, J.C., Mushinski, J.F. and Tucker, P.W. (1983). *EMBO J.* **2**, 887-898.
- Wu, G.E. and Paige, C.J. (1986). *EMBO J.* **5**, 3475-3481.
- Wu, G.E. and Paige, C.J. (1988). *J. Exp. Med.* **167**, 1499-1504.
- Yamawaki-Kanaoka, Y., Kanaoka, T., Takahashi, N., Obara, M. and Honjo, T. (1980). *Nature* **283**, 786-789.
- Yamawaki-Kanaoka, Y., Miyata, T. and Honjo, T. (1981). *Nucleic Acids Res.* **9**, 1365-1381.
- Yamawaki-Kanaoka, Y., Nakai, S., Miyata, T. and Honjo, T. (1982). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **79**, 2623-2627.
- Yancopoulos, G.D., Desiderio, S.V., Paskung, M., Kearney, J.F., Baltimore, D. and Alt, F.W. (1984). *Nature* **311**, 727-733.
- Yancopoulos, G.D., Mayhew, B.A. and Alt, F.W. (1988). *J. Exp. Med.* **168**, 417-435.
- Yang, P.-H., Olsen, N.J., Simionovich, K.A., Olee, T., Kozin, F., Carson, D.A. and Chen, P.P. (1990). *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* **88**, 7907-7911.
- Zong, S.Q., Nakai, S., Matsuda, F., Lee, K.H. and Honjo, T. (1988). *Immunol. Lett.* **17**, 329-334.
- Zouali, M. (1992). *Immunol. Rev.* **128**, 73-99.

## Genetic and Immunological Properties of Phage-Displayed Human Anti-Rh(D) Antibodies: Implications for Rh(D) Epitope Topology

By Tylis Y. Chang and Don L. Siegel

Understanding anti-Rh(D) antibodies on a molecular level would facilitate the genetic analysis of the human immune response to Rh(D), lead to the design of therapeutically useful reagents that modulate antibody binding, and provide relevant information regarding the structural organization of Rh(D) epitopes. Previously, we described a Fab/phage display-based method for producing a large array of anti-Rh(D) antibodies from the peripheral blood lymphocytes of a single alloimmunized donor. In the current study, we present a detailed analysis of 83 randomly selected clones. Sequence analysis showed the presence of 28 unique  $\gamma_1$  heavy chain and 41 unique light chain gene segments. These paired to produce 53 unique Fabs that had specificity for at least half of the major Rh(D) epitopes. Surprisingly, despite this diversity, only 4 closely related heavy chain germline genes were used (VH3-30, VH3-30.3, VH3-33, and VH3-21). Similarly, nearly all  $V_{\kappa}$  light chains (15/18) were derived from one germline gene (DPK9).  $\lambda$  light chains showed a more diverse  $V_{\lambda}$  gene usage,

but all (23/23) used the identical  $J_{\lambda}2$  gene. Several Fabs that differed in epitope specificity used identical heavy chains but different light chains. In particular, 2 such clones differed by only 3 residues, which resulted in a change from epD2 to epD3 specificity. These results suggest a model in which footprints of anti-Rh(D) antibodies are essentially identical to one another, and Rh(D) epitopes, as classically defined by panels of Rh(D) variant cells, are not discrete entities. Furthermore, these data imply that the epitope specificity of an anti-Rh(D) antibody can change during the course of somatic mutation. From a clinical perspective, this process, which we term epitope migration, has significance for the design of agents that modulate antibody production and for the creation of mimetics that block antibody binding in the settings of transfusion reactions and hemolytic disease of the newborn.

© 1998 by The American Society of Hematology.

**C**LINICALLY, THE HUMAN Rh(D) antigen is the most important red blood cell (RBC) membrane protein in transfusion medicine. The alloimmune response against Rh(D) produces high-affinity IgG antibodies that cause hemolytic transfusion reactions and hemolytic disease of the newborn (HDN). The prophylactic use of Rh(D)-immune globulin in pregnant Rh(D)-negative women has been a major advance in the prevention of HDN,<sup>1</sup> yet the mechanism by which the drug exerts its immune modulatory effect is not well understood.<sup>2</sup> Monoclonal antibodies (MoAbs) derived from the B cells of Rh(D)-immune globulin donors have defined several dozen Rh(D) epitopes<sup>3</sup>; paradoxically, the Rh(D) antigen, an approximately 30-kD transmembrane protein, has minimal extracellular mass and presents a very limited surface area for epitope expression.<sup>4-9</sup> The molecular cloning of large repertoires of anti-Rh(D) antibodies would help reconcile these observations. In addition, it would facilitate the rational development of

recombinant formulations of Rh(D)-immune globulin and aid in the design of therapeutic agents that block antibody binding. Furthermore, the comprehensive genetic analysis of anti-Rh(D) antibodies within a given alloimmunized individual would serve as a paradigm for human immune repertoire development, an area in which limited information is currently available.

Previously, no more than 8 IgG anti-Rh(D) human MoAbs have been derived from a single individual.<sup>10</sup> The primary challenge in studying the Rh(D) immune response has been technical difficulties inherent in human B-cell immortalization. Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) transformation results in relatively low transformation efficiencies<sup>11</sup> that can undergo a decline in antibody production,<sup>12-15</sup> whereas cell fusion methods have been hampered by the lack of good fusion partners.<sup>16,17</sup> More recently, molecular approaches have been developed that bypass the need for cell transformation.<sup>18-20</sup> Conceptually, these techniques, referred to as repertoire cloning or Fab/phage display, seek to immortalize Ig mRNA rather than the B cells from which they were derived. In an earlier report, our laboratory adapted these techniques for isolating Fab/phage antibodies directed against conformation-dependent antigens expressed on cell surfaces.<sup>21</sup> Using intact human RBCs, we isolated highly diverse  $\gamma_1\kappa$  and  $\gamma_1\lambda$  Fab/phage libraries against the Rh(D) antigen from the B cells of a single Rh(D)-immune globulin donor.<sup>22</sup>

In the following report, we present a detailed genetic and serological analysis of 53 unique anti-Rh(D) antibodies derived from 83 randomly chosen clones. The results complement previous reports on the genetic and biochemical makeup of monoclonal anti-Rh(D) antibodies derived from multiple donors.<sup>10,23-25</sup> Significantly, our data also demonstrate extensive genetic homology between antibodies directed against different Rh(D) epitopes. We provide evidence that antibodies directed against different epitopes can be clonally related. Finally, we suggest a model that reconciles the serological diversity of anti-Rh(D) antibodies with the topological constraints imposed by the Rh(D) antigen.

*From the Blood Bank/Transfusion Medicine Section, Department of Pathology & Laboratory Medicine, University of Pennsylvania School of Medicine, Philadelphia, PA.*

*Submitted September 29, 1997; accepted November 20, 1997.*

*Supported in part by March of Dimes Birth Defects Foundation Basil O'Connor (Grant No. 5-FY94-0787) and Clinical Research (Grant No. 6-FY96-0367) Awards (D.L.S.), by a National Institutes of Health Specialized Center of Research (SCOR) in Transfusion Medicine and Biology Award (P50-HL54516; to D.L.S.), and by a grant from the National Blood Foundation (T.Y.C.).*

*Address reprint requests to Don L. Siegel, PhD, MD, Department of Pathology & Laboratory Medicine, 6-55 Founders Pavilion, Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania, 3400 Spruce St, Philadelphia, PA 19104.*

*The publication costs of this article were defrayed in part by page charge payment. This article must therefore be hereby marked "advertisement" in accordance with 18 U.S.C. section 1734 solely to indicate this fact.*

© 1998 by The American Society of Hematology.  
0006-4971/98/9108-0020\$3.00/0

## MATERIALS AND METHODS

*Production of Monoclonal Anti-Rh(D) Phage-Displayed and Soluble Fab Molecules*

Methods for the isolation of human anti-Rh(D)-specific antibodies from  $\gamma_1\kappa$  and  $\gamma_1\lambda$  Fab/phage display libraries using the pComb3H phagemid vector and a cell-surface panning protocol have been previously published.<sup>22</sup> Soluble anti-Rh(D) Fab preparations for inhibition studies were produced from bacterial cultures transfected with plasmid DNA from which the M13 gene III coat protein sequence had been excised as described.<sup>21,26</sup> Cultures were grown by shaking at 300 RPM at 37°C in superbroth (30 g/L tryptone, 20 g/L yeast, 10 g/L MOPS, pH 7.00) containing 20 mmol/L  $\text{MgCl}_2$  and 50  $\mu\text{g/mL}$  carbenicillin to an  $\text{OD}_{600}$  of 0.5. Isopropyl- $\beta$ -D-thiogalactopyranoside (IPTG) was added to 1 mmol/L and cultures were shaken overnight at 30°C. Bacterial pellets were harvested and resuspended in 1/50th of the initial culture volume with osmotic shock buffer (500 mmol/L sucrose, 1 mmol/L EDTA, 100 mmol/L Tris, pH 8.00), incubated for 30 minutes at 4°C, and centrifuged at 16,000g for 15 minutes at 4°C. Fab-containing supernatants were dialyzed against phosphate-buffered saline (PBS) and used in agglutination experiments without further purification.

*Anti-Rh(D) Antibody Binding Assays*

The binding of anti-Rh(D) Fab/phage or soluble Fab molecules to normal or partial Rh(D) antigens was assessed by indirect agglutination assays as described.<sup>21,22</sup> Briefly, 100  $\mu\text{L}$  aliquots of phage-displayed Fabs or soluble Fabs were incubated with 50  $\mu\text{L}$  of a 3% suspension of RBCs. After 1 hour of incubation at 37°C, the RBCs were washed three times with 2 mL of cold PBS to remove unbound antibody. The resulting RBC pellets were resuspended in 100  $\mu\text{L}$  of a 10  $\mu\text{g/mL}$  solution of sheep anti-M13 antibody (5 Prime  $\rightarrow$  3 Prime, Boulder, CO) for Fab/phage experiments or goat antihuman  $\kappa$  or  $\lambda$  light chain antibody (Tago, Burlingame, CA) for  $\gamma_1\kappa$  or  $\gamma_1\lambda$  soluble Fab experiments, respectively. The RBC suspensions were transferred to the round-bottomed wells of a 96-well microplate and left undisturbed for 2 hours. Negative reactions show sharp approximately 2-mm diameter RBC spots, whereas the RBCs in agglutinated wells form a thin carpet coating the entire floor of the well.<sup>22</sup> Agglutination titers for recombinant antibodies were determined by performing serial twofold dilutions in 1% bovine serum albumin (BSA)/PBS. Typically, Fab/phage had agglutination titers of 1/1,024 to 1/2,048 (where neat is defined as  $5 \times 10^{12}$  tfu/mL),<sup>22</sup> and soluble Fabs had agglutination titers of 1/64 to 1/128 when prepared as described above.

For determining Rh(D) epitope specificity for anti-Rh(D) Fab/phage antibodies, the following reference Rh(D) variant cells were obtained from the MRC Blood Group Unit (London, UK), The New York Blood Center (New York, NY), or Gamma Biologicals, Inc (Houston, TX): O/D<sup>IIIa</sup>Cce, G positive; B/D<sup>IIIc</sup>Cce; A/D<sup>IVa</sup>Cce; A/D<sup>IVb</sup>Cce; O/D<sup>IVb</sup>Cce; B/D<sup>IVb</sup>Cce, Go<sup>a</sup> negative, Rh32 negative; O/D<sup>Va</sup>Cce; O/D<sup>Va</sup>Ee, D<sup>w</sup> positive; O/D<sup>VI</sup>Cce; B/D<sup>VI</sup>Cce; AB/D<sup>VI</sup>Cce; A/D<sup>VI</sup>Ee; O/D<sup>VII</sup>Cce; and O/D<sup>VII</sup>Cce. Each Fab/phage antibody was tested on at least three separate occasions against at least two different examples of each variant cell type, and identical epitope assignments were obtained each time. For antibodies that demonstrated previously undescribed patterns of reactivity or repeatedly weak reactivity against one type of cell (see the Results), monoclonal Fab/phage were prepared on a least four separate occasions to verify the patterns of reactivity.

For inhibition studies, the ability of antibodies with different Rh(D) epitope specificities to compete with each other for binding was assessed by preparing stocks of each clone in both a soluble Fab form and a phage-displayed form. Pairwise combinations of soluble Fabs and Fab/phage were prepared and added to Rh(D)-positive RBCs. The resulting incubation mixes comprised 50  $\mu\text{L}$  of a 3% suspension of

RBCs, 100  $\mu\text{L}$  of undiluted soluble Fab, and 100  $\mu\text{L}$  of Fab/phage diluted to its highest agglutinating titer. After 1 hour of incubation at 37°C, RBCs were washed, resuspended in anti-M13 antibody, and placed in microplate wells as described above. That the amount of soluble Fab present in an incubation mixture was sufficient to compete away a Fab/phage that shared the same binding site was determined by verifying that each soluble Fab preparation could block its own Fab/phage (see the Results).

Inhibition experiments were also performed using pairwise combinations of soluble Fabs instead of soluble Fab and Fab/phage combinations. In this type of experiment, pairs of soluble Fabs specific for different epitopes were chosen such that one Fab contained a  $\lambda$  light chain and the other a  $\kappa$  light chain. Incubations with RBCs were performed with one Fab in excess and the other in limiting amounts. Blocking of the latter antibody was assessed using a secondary antibody (anti- $\lambda$  or anti- $\kappa$ ) specific for its light chain isotype.

*Nucleotide Sequencing and Analysis*

Plasmid DNA for sequencing was prepared using the Qiawell system (Qiagen, Chatsworth, CA). Double-stranded DNA was sequenced using light chain or heavy chain Ig constant region reverse primers or a set of unique pComb3H vector primers that anneal 5' to the respective Ig chain<sup>26,27</sup> and automated fluorescence sequencing (Applied Biosystems, Foster City, CA; DNA Sequencing Facility, University of Pennsylvania Department of Genetics and Cancer Center, Philadelphia, PA). Sequence analysis and variable region germline assignments were performed using DNAPlot<sup>28</sup> and the V Base Directory of Human V Gene Sequences (March 1997 update).<sup>29</sup> Germline assignments were corroborated with the MacVector (v. 6.0) software package (Oxford Molecular Group, Oxford, UK) against the same database. Multiple sequence alignments and predictions of isoelectric point were calculated using the Pileup and Isoelectric programs of the GCG software package (v. 8.0.1; GCG, Madison, WI). Statistical analysis was performed with Statview (Abacus Concepts, Berkeley, CA).

Because of the large number of heavy and light chain sequences ( $N = 69$ ), only alignments of the predicted amino acid sequences are presented. Nucleotide sequences of all clones are available in Genbank.

## RESULTS

*Sequence Analysis of Anti-Rh(D) Heavy and Light Chains*

We previously reported on the use of Fab/phage display and cell-surface panning to isolate a large array of anti-Rh(D) antibodies from the peripheral blood lymphocytes of a single hyperimmunized donor.<sup>22,30</sup> Separate  $\gamma_1\kappa$  and  $\gamma_1\lambda$  Fab/phage display libraries had been constructed and contained  $7 \times 10^7$  and  $3 \times 10^8$  independent transformants, respectively, based on electroporation efficiency. Each library was panned independently using a simultaneous positive/negative selection strategy with magnetically labeled Rh(D)-positive RBCs and unmodified Rh(D)-negative RBCs as described. After two rounds of panning, 32 of 36  $\gamma_1\lambda$  and 15 of 15  $\gamma_1\kappa$  randomly chosen clones were positive for anti-Rh(D) activity. After the third round of panning, 24 of 24  $\gamma_1\lambda$  and 12 of 12  $\gamma_1\kappa$  clones were positive. Nucleotide sequencing of the 83 positive clones showed a total of 28 unique heavy and 41 unique light chains. Because of combinatorial effects during phage display library construction, heavy and light chain gene segments paired to produce 53 unique Fab antibodies.<sup>22</sup>

*Anti-Rh(D) heavy chains.* All of the heavy chain sequences used V<sub>H</sub>III family-encoded gene products (Figs 1 and 2).

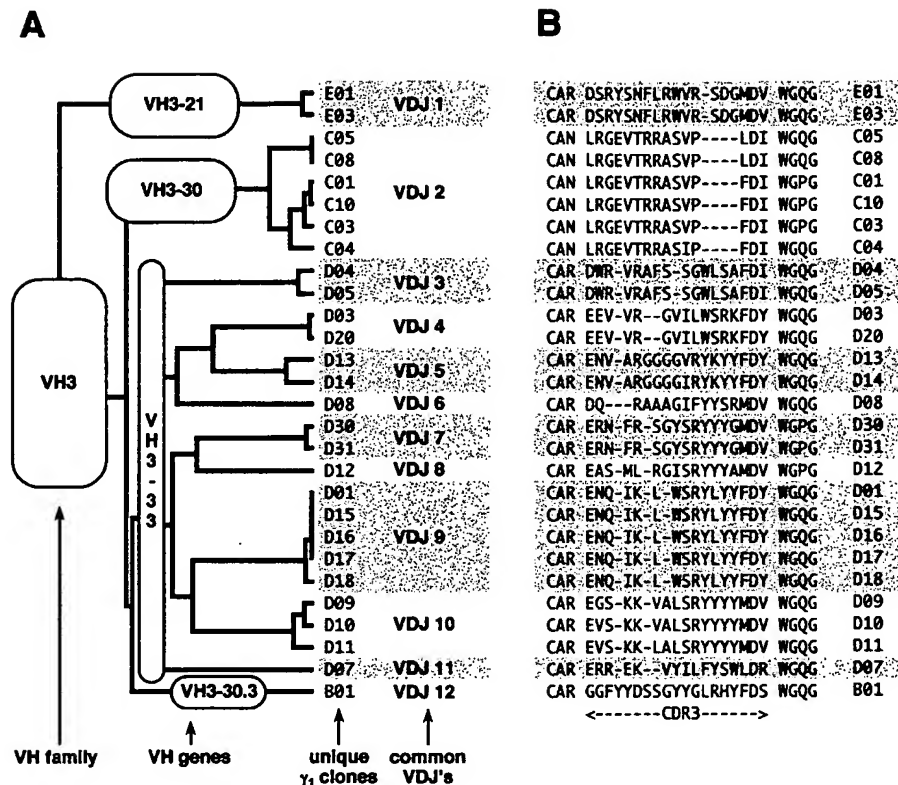


Fig 1. (A) Dendrogram and (B) CDR3 alignment of anti-Rh(D) heavy chains. The 28 unique heavy chain clones are organized by  $V_H$  family,  $V_H$  germline gene, and VDJ rearrangement. Each heavy chain clone is identified by a numeral preceded by a letter (B through E) that denotes its germline gene. The 28 heavy chains comprised 12 distinct VDJ regions, designated VDJ1 through VDJ12. Clones with identical VDJ joins putatively result from intraclonal diversity of 12 original B lymphocytes.

Several sequences shared identical VDJ joining regions, and 12 unique VDJ rearrangements were identified and designated VDJ1 through VDJ12. Alignment of these sequences against the V Base Directory of Human V Gene Sequences<sup>29</sup> showed that only four  $V_H$ III genes were used by these antibodies: VH3-21, VH 3-30, VH 3-33, and VH 3-30.3. VH3-21 was used by 1 of the 12 VDJs and 2 of the 28 clones; VH3-30 by 1 VDJ and 6 clones; VH3-33 by 9 VDJs and 19 clones; and VH3-30.3 by 1 VDJ and 1 clone. Interestingly, VH3-30, VH3-33, and VH3-30.3 comprise a set of closely related genes (>98% homology; Fig 2B) and their next nearest neighbor, VH3-07, is only 90% homologous (Fig 2C). Hereafter, these three genes are referred to as the VH3-33 superspecies. Heavy chain E1 differed from VH3-21 by 6 mutations and from VH3-48 by 10 mutations; hence, it was assigned to the former germline gene. Because there were no common mutations among the VH3-33 clones, it is highly probable that the donor possessed the VH3-33 germline gene. However, we could not formally rule out gene duplication with allelic variants of VH3-33 or the existence of variant alleles of the other germline genes in the donor. The isolation of clones sharing multiple VDJ joining regions argues that cloning artifacts cannot account for the  $V_H$  gene restrictions observed.

Neither  $J_H$  nor D segments showed restriction. At least 9 different D segments were used and  $J_H$  gene use comprised  $J_H6$  (5 VDJs and 9 clones),  $J_H4$  (4 VDJs and 10 clones),  $J_H3$  (2 VDJs and 8 clones), and  $J_H5$  (1 VDJ and 1 clone). All four  $V_H$  genes were Chothia class 1-3,<sup>31</sup> and the CDR3s showed a narrow range of length from 15 to 19 residues.

Because rearranged heavy chain genes demonstrate extensive diversity, clones sharing identical VDJ rearrangements are generally considered to have arisen from the same clone. Based on nucleotide alignment with the germline genes (data not shown), an ontogeny tree was constructed for the 12 VDJs and 28 clones (Fig 3). By using the most parsimonious mutation scheme (ie, postulating the minimum number of mutations), putative intermediate antibodies were derived for several of the VDJs and were designated Ca, Cb, Da, Db, and Dc (Figs 2A and 3). Compared with the isolated heavy chain clones, which displayed between 6 and 23 nucleotide differences from their germline counterparts, these putative intermediates had between 3 and 12 mutations from germline. Based on the ontogeny tree, the number of independent mutations could be tabulated among the clones. The most commonly mutated residues were 52a and 58 (7 independent mutations), followed by residues 30, 31, and 50 (6 mutations) and residue 55 (5 mutations). In the VH3-33 superspecies, residues 52a and 58 in CDR2 are tyrosines and residue 52a was mutated to phenylalanine in 6 of the 11 VDJs derived from VH3-33 superspecies  $V_H$  genes. Mutations at residue 58 comprised glutamate (3), aspartate (2), histidine (1), and asparagine (1). The AGY serines at residues 30, 31, and 55 were mutated to a number of different amino acids, although the AGY serine at 82b was conserved in all clones. The valine at residue 50 in the VH3-33 superspecies also had a diverse set of mutations. This distribution of hot spots is similar to that seen with nonproductive rearrangements as previously reported by Dörner et al.<sup>32</sup>





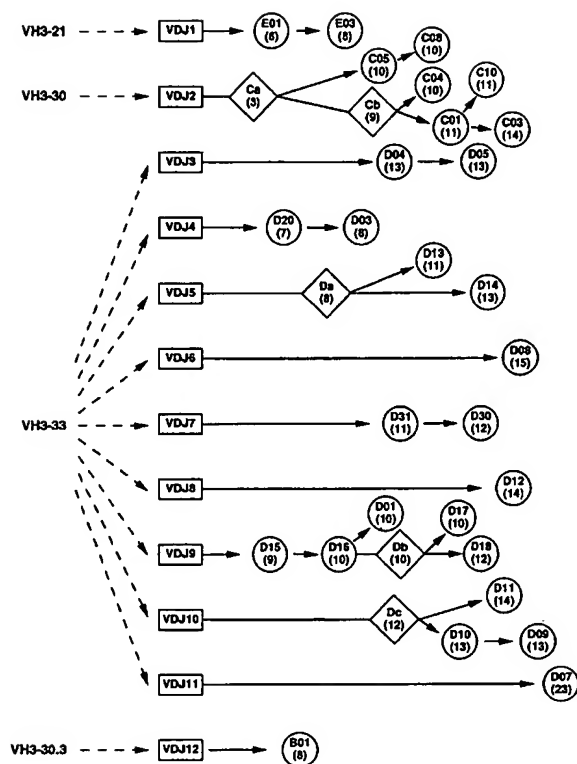


Fig 3. Ontogenic tree of anti-Rh(D) heavy chains constructed using nucleotide alignment data. Circles represent isolated and sequenced clones and diamonds represent putative intermediates (see Fig 2A). The number of nucleotide mutations from its germline  $V_H$  gene is shown in parentheses below the clone name. The distance along the horizontal axis represents the degree of mutation (including J segments) within the constraints of the diagram.

origins. However, an ontogeny tree was constructed by grouping common V and J gene segments along with common mutations (data not shown). Based on this analysis, the 18  $\kappa$  chains comprised at least 10 different recombination events.

$\lambda$  light chains were restricted by their  $J_\lambda$  gene usage but showed no restriction in their use of  $V_\lambda$  genes (Fig 5). The 23  $\lambda$  light chains all used the  $J_\lambda 2$  Vasicsek gene but were derived from  $V_\lambda I$  (12 clones),  $V_\lambda III$  (5),  $V_\lambda VII$  (3),  $V_\lambda II$  (2), and  $V_\lambda IV$  (1) family genes. The number of mutations ranged from 2 to 41 from the nearest germline  $V_\lambda$  gene. Based on common joining regions and mutations, these 23  $\lambda$  light chains were derived from at least 13 different B cells.

#### Assessment of the Diversity of the Unpanned Libraries

To determine whether the apparent restriction in gene usage of the anti-Rh(D) antibodies could have been due to preselection factors (ie, cloning artifacts), we assessed the diversity of the unpanned  $\gamma_1\kappa$  and  $\gamma_1\lambda$  Fab/phage libraries. By sequencing 39 randomly picked clones, we determined that there were no duplicate heavy or light chain sequences and that there was significant heterogeneity in V gene family representation before selection (Fig 6). In fact, the variable region gene family distribution was not unlike that found by other investigators for

IgG-secreting lymphocytes in adult peripheral blood.<sup>33</sup> Furthermore, of the 14  $V_H III$ -encoded negative clones, only one used a VH3-33 superspecies germline gene (VH3-30.3); the other 13 were encoded by VH3-07 (3), 3-09 (2), 3-15 (2), 3-48 (2), 3-72 (2), 3-23 (1), and DP-58 (1). Therefore, the restriction of the 83 anti-Rh(D) clones to the VH3-33, 3-30, 3-30.3, and 3-21 genes is significant and not a result of skewed representation of certain germline genes within the originally constructed  $\gamma_1\kappa$  and  $\gamma_1\lambda$  Fab/phage libraries.

#### Heavy and Light Chain Contribution to Rh(D) Epitope Specificity

Because of the conformational dependency of Rh(D) antigenicity, Rh(D) epitopes have been classically defined through the use of RBCs obtained from rare individuals whose cells appear to produce Rh(D) antigens lacking certain epitopes.<sup>34</sup> Examining the pattern of agglutination of a particular anti-Rh(D) MoAb with such sets of partial Rh(D) RBCs enables one to categorize that antibody's fine specificity.

Monoclonal Fab/phage preparations were prepared in triplicate for each of the 53 anti-Rh(D) clones and tested against a panel of Rh(D) category cells IIIa/c, IVa, IVb, Va, VI, and VII. This panel of cells can differentiate between the Rh(D) epitope specificities as described by Lomas et al<sup>6</sup> (designated epitopes epD1, epD2, epD3, epD4, epD5, and epD6/7). Agglutination experiments with the Fab/phage clones showed five different patterns of reactivity, including a new pattern that had not been described in the original study by Lomas et al<sup>6</sup> or in the more recently described 9, 30, or 37 epitope systems (Figs 7 and 8).<sup>3,35</sup> Although nearly all Fab/phage gave unequivocal agglutination reactions, a few antibodies gave repeatedly weak patterns of reactivity against one of the panel cells. For these reactions, monoclonal Fab/phage were prepared on at least four separate occasions to verify the patterns of reactivity.

The most commonly recognized epitope was epD6/7, against which 13 clones were directed. Interestingly, monoclonal anti-Rh(D) clones isolated using conventional tissue culture methods are most often specific for epD6/7.<sup>34</sup> epD2, epD1, and epD3 were recognized by 10, 7, and 2 clones, respectively. Six clones agglutinated cells of categories IIIa/c, IVa, and VII, but not of categories IVb, Va, and VI, and were designated anti-epDX. This pattern is identical to epD1, except that the IVa cell is agglutinated. Three clones gave intermediate reactions with cell IVa, but otherwise showed patterns consistent with epDX or epD1. These clones were designated epDX<sup>1</sup> or epD1<sup>X</sup>, depending on whether this reactivity against cell IVa was stronger or weaker, respectively (Fig 8). Similarly, reaction patterns for epD1 and epD2 differ by a positive reaction with the category Va cell; therefore, one clone was given epD2<sup>1</sup> specificity because it gave only moderate reactivity against that cell. Such variable reactions against one or more partial Rh(D) cells have been observed for anti-Rh(D) MoAbs produced through conventional tissue culture methods.<sup>36</sup>

Because of the reassortment of heavy and light chain gene segments that occurs during the construction of a phage display library, a number of clones were isolated that shared either a heavy (eg, E1) or light (eg, M3) chain sequence (Fig 8). Some heavy chains were found to have paired with both  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  light chains (eg, C1, D20), and each demonstrated anti-Rh(D)



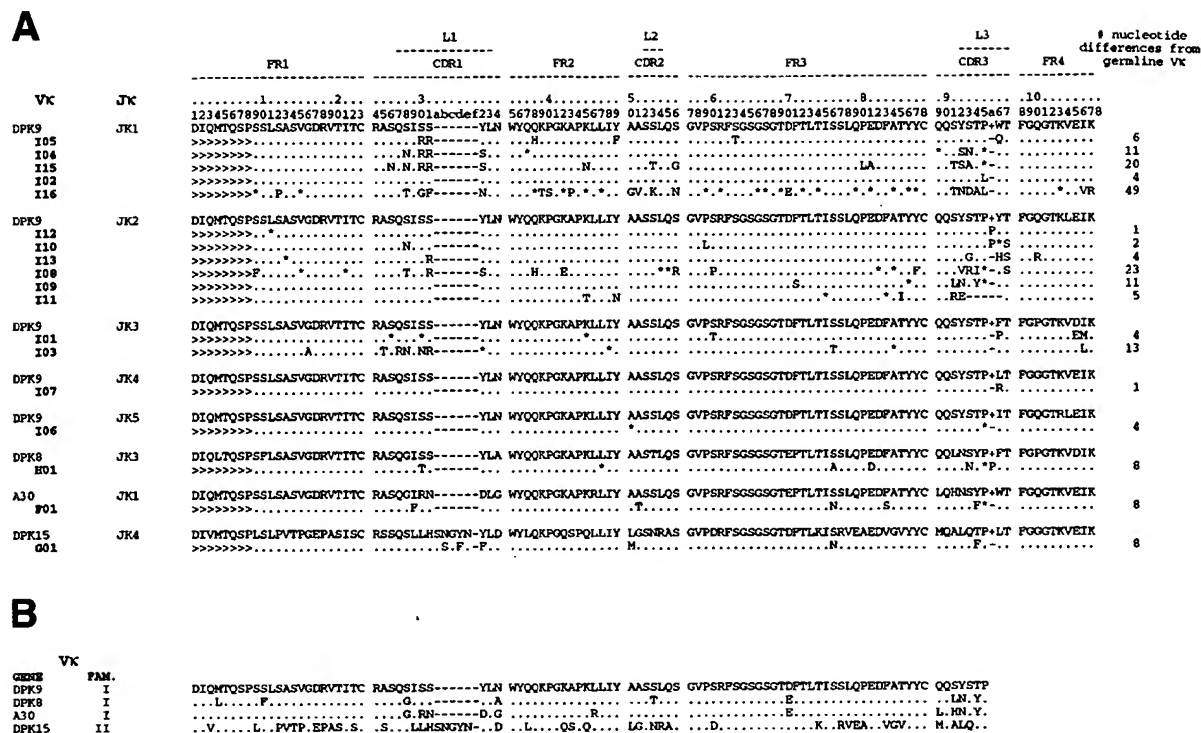


Fig 4. (A) Alignment of anti-Rh(D)  $\kappa$  light chains to their nearest germline V and J genes shows predominance of DPK-9 usage from the V<sub>K</sub> family. Nomenclature for clones is similar to that for heavy chains but uses the letters F through I. (B) Alignment of the four V<sub>K</sub> genes used by anti-Rh(D) light chains. The key is the same as that used in Fig 2A. Genbank accession numbers for anti-Rh(D)  $\kappa$  light chains are listed in the Appendix.

specificity. Interestingly, some heavy chains (eg, E1, D12) mapped to different epitopes depending on the light chains with which they were paired. In particular, the light chains of two such clones, E1/M2 and E1/M3, differed by only 3 amino acid residues (Fig 5) and these differences appear to confer specificity for epD2 versus epD3.

#### Inhibition Studies

To investigate the topological relationships among the Rh(D) epitopes, inhibition studies were performed. Previous work by Gorick et al<sup>37</sup> using pairs of unlabeled and <sup>125</sup>I-labeled anti-Rh(D) MoAbs demonstrated that antibodies to at least 3 different Rh(D) epitopes (subsequently identified as epD1, D6, and D7)<sup>6</sup> could inhibit one another. We have confirmed and extended these findings using recombinant antibodies to 5 Rh(D) epitopes (Fig 9). In one series of experiments, we exploited the ability to express each antibody in both a soluble Fab as well as phage-displayed form to ask whether a soluble Fab against one epitope would inhibit the agglutination induced by an Fab/phage directed against a different epitope. Reciprocal pairs of soluble Fab and Fab/phage specific for epD1, epD2, epD3, epD6/7, and epDX were tested. All 10 combinations showed mutual inhibition patterns (shown in Fig 9A for an anti-epD3/anti-epD6/7 combination). To show that this inhibition was not due to nonspecific factors, a control with an irrelevant RBC-binding recombinant antibody (an anti-blood group B antibody) was performed (Fig 9B). That sufficient inhibitory amounts of soluble Fab was present were first

verified by demonstrating that each soluble Fab could inhibit its own Fab/phage (Fig 9A and B; samples on diagonal). Similar results were obtained using pairs of soluble Fabs which differed in their light chain isotype composition (Fig 9C).

#### Isoelectric Point (pI) Analysis of Anti-Rh(D) Antibodies

The restriction in V<sub>H</sub> germline gene usage to only four V<sub>H</sub>III family members was intriguing in light of their ability to confer specificity to a number of Rh(D) epitopes. As suggested by Boucher et al,<sup>10</sup> V<sub>H</sub> germline gene segments used to encode anti-Rh(D) antibodies are among the most cationic segments available in the human V<sub>H</sub> repertoire that may be used to account for the relatively high pI of polyclonal anti-Rh(D)-containing antisera.<sup>38,39</sup> Although the cationic nature of the antibodies may be important for binding to Rh(D), it has also been suggested that a constitutive net positive charge may be necessary to permeate the highly negative RBC  $\zeta$  potential, thus permitting antibody to contact antigen.<sup>34</sup> In either case, analysis of the predicted pI for the 28 heavy chains and 41 light chains isolated here showed an interesting phenomenon for the heavy versus light chains. Using the pI interval scale of Boucher et al,<sup>10</sup> the average pI of the 4 germline V<sub>H</sub> segments used to encode the 28 heavy chains is high ( $9.87 \pm 0.15$ ) and significantly higher than that of 39 randomly picked, non-Rh(D) binding clones from the original unpanned libraries ( $9.24 \pm 0.80$ ,  $P < 10^{-5}$ ). Similar to the results of Boucher et al,<sup>10</sup> the addition of D and J<sub>H</sub> segments and the introduction of somatic mutation did not significantly change the pI of the average

## A

		FR1	CDR1	FR2	CDR2	FR3	CDR3	FR4	# nucleotide differences from germline V $\lambda$
V $\lambda$	J $\lambda$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
7a.2.3/DPL18	JL2Vasicek	1214567891234567890123	45678901234567890123	5678901234567890123	01234567890123456789	78901234567890123456789	901234567890123456789	901234567890123456789	8901234567
K01		QVVTQEP5LTVSPQGTITLTC	ASSTGAVTSQYTFN	WQQKPGQAPRALIY	ST----	SKRHS	WTPARFSGSLG--GKAALTLGSGVPEDEADYYC	LLYYOGAQ	
K02		QVVTQEP5LTVSPQGTITLTC	ASSTGAVTSQYTFN	WQQKPGQAPRALIY	ST----	SKRHS	WTPARFSGSLG--GKAALTLGSGVPEDEADYYC	LLYYOGAQ	
K03		QVVTQEP5LTVSPQGTITLTC	ASSTGAVTSQYTFN	WQQKPGQAPRALIY	ST----	SKRHS	WTPARFSGSLG--GKAALTLGSGVPEDEADYYC	LLYYOGAQ	
2c.11809+	JL2Vasicek	QSALTQPPSASGSPQSVTISC	TGTSSDAGGNYVVS	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	EV----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--NTASLTGSLQAEADYYC	SSYAGSNF	
K01		QSALTQPPSASGSPQSVTISC	TGTSSDAGGNYVVS	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	EV----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--NTASLTGSLQAEADYYC	SSYAGSNF	
DPL10/1v2066	JL2Vasicek	QSALTQPPSASGSPQSVTISC	TGTSSDAGGNYVVS	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	EV----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--NTASLTGSLQAEADYYC	SSYAGSNF	
S01		QSALTQPPSASGSPQSVTISC	TGTSSDAGGNYVVS	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	EV----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--NTASLTGSLQAEADYYC	SSYAGSNF	
DPL7/VL1.2	JL2Vasicek	QSVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
O03		QSVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
O02		QSVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
O01		QSVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
1b.366P5/DPL5	JL2Vasicek	QSVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
M01		QSVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
M02		QSVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
1g.400B5/DPL3	JL2Vasicek	QSVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
M02		QSVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
M03		QSVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
M01		QSVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
1c.10.2/DPL2	JL2Vasicek	QSVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
L05		QSVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
L03		QSVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
L04		QSVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
L01		QSVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
DPL16/VL3.1	JL2Vasicek	SSBLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
J02		SSBLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
J01		SSBLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
J05		SSBLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
J04		SSBLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
3p.61A4+	JL2Vasicek	SVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
P01		SVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
4b.68B6	JL2Vasicek	QVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	
G01		QVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC	TGSSSNGAGYDWH	WYQHPGKAPKLMIY	GN----	SKRPS	GVDPFSGSKSG--TSASLAITGLQAEADYYC	QSYDSSLSG	

## B

V $\lambda$	FAM.	GENE
7a.2.3/DPL18	VII	QVVTQEP5LTVSPQGTITLTC
2c.11809+	II	QSALTQPPSASGSPQSVTISC
DPL10/1v2066	II	QSALTQPPSASGSPQSVTISC
DPL7/VL1.2	I	QSVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC
1b.366P5/DPL5	I	QSVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC
1g.400B5/DPL3	I	QSVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC
1c.10.2/DPL2	I	QSVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC
DPL16/VL3.1	III	SSBLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC
3p.61A4+	III	SVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC
4b.68B6	IV	QVLTQPPSASGAPQKVTISC

Fig 5. (A) Alignment of anti-Rh(D)  $\lambda$  light chains to their nearest germline V and J genes and (B) alignment of the 10 V $\lambda$  germline genes used shows the use of a diverse set of variable region genes derived from multiple families. However, all of the clones use the identical J $\lambda$  gene segment. Nomenclature for the clones is similar to that for heavy chains but uses the letters J through S. The key is the same as that used in Fig 2A. Genbank accession numbers for anti-Rh(D)  $\lambda$  light chains are listed in the Appendix.

anti-Rh(D) heavy chain ( $9.81 \pm 0.33$ ,  $P < .37$ ). However, for the light chains, the average pI of their germline counterparts was not cationic, but the light chains became so through the addition of J $\lambda$  segments and somatic mutation. Overall, for all

18  $\kappa$  and 23  $\lambda$  light chains, paired *t*-test analyses before and after somatic mutation showed a significant increase in net positive charge when comparing germline V $\lambda$  ( $6.63 \pm 1.47$ ) with expressed V $\lambda$  ( $7.28 \pm 1.51$ ,  $P < 10^{-3}$ ) or germline V $\lambda$ J $\lambda$  ( $7.43 \pm$

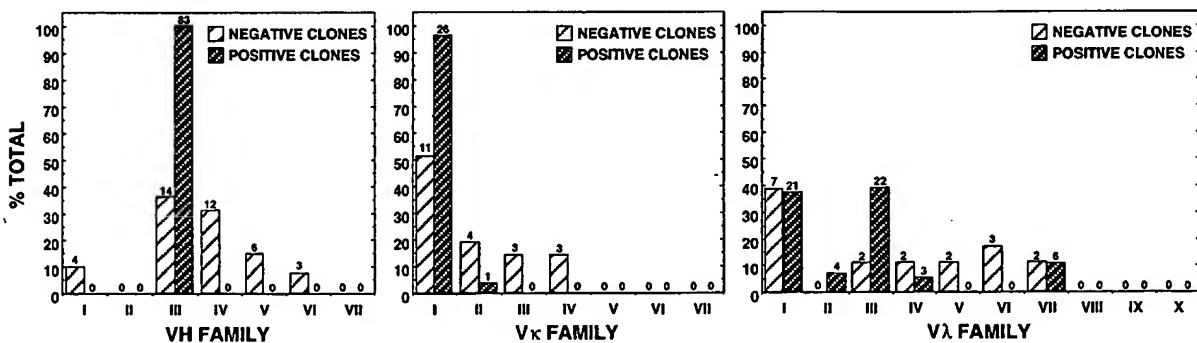


Fig 6. Comparison of variable region gene family usage for anti-Rh(D)-specific clones with those used by randomly picked, non-Rh(D)-binding clones from original  $\gamma$  $\kappa$  and  $\gamma$  $\lambda$  unselected libraries. Lightly hatched bars reveal heterogeneity in V $\kappa$  (left panel), V $\lambda$  (middle panel), and V $\lambda$  (right panel) family representation before selection for anti-Rh(D) specificity. Numbers above bars represent absolute number of clones in that group.

CLONE (HC/LC)	Rh(D) VARIANT CATEGORY						ASSIGNED EPIOTOPE
	IIIc	IVa	IVb	Va	VI	VII	
E1/L4							epD1
E1/M2							epD2
E1/M3							epD3
D20/K3							epD6/7
D7/J4							"epDX"

Fig 7. Determination of the Rh(D) binding epitope of anti-Rh(D) Fab/phage clones. The fine specificities of monoclonal Fab/phage clones were determined by their ability to agglutinate members of a panel of six Rh(D) variant RBCs. Shown are the five different agglutination patterns obtained from screening all of the 53 Fab/phage clones. The particular clones shown are identified by their unique heavy chain/light chain pairings using the nomenclature defined in Figs 1, 4, and 5. For E1/M3, reactivity with additional Rh(D) variant cells would be required to distinguish its specificity for epD3 versus epD9.<sup>3</sup> Rh(D) epitope assignments are as per Lomas et al.<sup>6</sup> Note that inclusion of the category IVb cell (not available in our previous study)<sup>22</sup> permits the identification of a new epitope designated epDX (see text).

1.47) with expressed V<sub>L</sub>J<sub>L</sub> (8.55 ± 1.35,  $P < 10^{-7}$ ). There was no significant increase in a similar analysis of 16 non-Rh(D) binding clones ( $P < .59$  and  $P < .19$ , respectively). Examination of the light chain sequences (Figs 4 and 5) showed that this increase in pI resulted from mutations that not only introduced positively charged residues, but also eliminated some negatively charged residues. There were 31 such events, 29 (91%) of which occurred in the light chain CDR regions.

## DISCUSSION

### Conventional and Phage-Displayed Anti-Rh(D) MoAbs

Because of differences in methodology, we were interested in comparing our phage-display-derived anti-Rh(D) clones with those produced by conventional tissue culture techniques (EBV transformation and cell fusion). Despite the relatively small number of previously published sequences for IgG anti-Rh(D) antibodies ( $N = 21$ ) and the fact that they were derived from over 10 different donors,<sup>10,23-25</sup> there was surprisingly good correlation between the two groups (Table 1). Both cohorts demonstrated a predominance of V<sub>H</sub>III-family encoded germline genes, particularly those of the VH3-33 superspecies. CDR3 regions showed similar lengths, ranging from 15 to 19 residues for Fab/phage antibodies and 16 to 20 for conventional monoclonals, although one heterohybridoma was an outlier with a CDR3 length of 28 residues.  $\kappa$  light chains were biased towards V<sub>κ</sub>I family members and  $\lambda$  light chains demonstrated the preferential use of the J<sub>λ</sub>2Vasicek gene. The only qualitative discrepancy was in V<sub>λ</sub> family usage, where Fab/phage clones demonstrated a slight preference for V<sub>λ</sub>I versus V<sub>λ</sub>III family members for conventional monoclonals. However, in both cohorts, DPL16 was used more often than any other  $\lambda$  light chain gene.

It has been suggested in the literature that the VH4-34

(VH4.21) germline gene, a gene used by many autoantibodies and cold agglutinins,<sup>40-42</sup> may play an important role in the immune response to Rh(D).<sup>43</sup> However, these conclusions arose from the analysis of IgM monoclonals and only 2 of the 21 published anti-Rh(D) IgG sequences used VH4-34.<sup>25</sup> In a related series of experiments, we pooled aliquots of the  $\gamma_1\kappa$  and  $\gamma_1\lambda$  libraries obtained after the second and third rounds of selection and then panned them against the VH4-34 specific rat anti-idiotypic MoAb (9G4<sup>44</sup>). Although we successfully enriched for VH4-34 encoded antibodies, the Fab/phage were not specific for Rh(D) and displayed serological characteristics similar to those of cold agglutinins (data not shown). We are currently examining a  $\mu$  phage display library from the same donor to compare gene usage.

### Rh(D) Epitopes and Significance of Antibody Sequences

Since the initial report by Argall et al<sup>45</sup> in 1953, it has been recognized that rare individuals who type as Rh(D)-positive can produce allo-anti-Rh(D) antibodies in response to Rh(D) immunization by transfusion or pregnancy. This phenomenon was explained by hypothesizing that the Rh(D) antigen is a mosaic structure and that these individuals were producing alloantibodies to parts of the mosaic they lack. By systematically examining patterns of reactivity between their cells and sera, RBCs expressing partial Rh(D) antigens were divided into categories, each presumed to have a different abnormality in their Rh(D) antigen. Through the subsequent use of index panels of monoclonal anti-Rh(D) antibodies, a series of epitopes were defined of which the number and combination varied from one Rh(D) category to another. As new monoclonals were produced, their reactivity profiles against these partial Rh(D) RBCs became the standard method for determining Rh(D) antibody epitope specificity. Molecular analyses of partial Rh(D) phenotypes have shown that the Rh(D) genes in these individuals have either undergone intergenic recombination with the highly homologous Rh(CE) gene or, less commonly, have sustained point mutation(s).<sup>46</sup>

As noted earlier, to investigate the topological relationships among Rh(D) epitopes, Gorick et al<sup>37</sup> performed competition experiments with Rh(D) MoAbs and observed varying degrees of inhibition. These results, when combined with those of Lomas et al,<sup>6</sup> suggested a model for Rh(D) in which epitopes are spatially distinct yet demonstrate a certain degree of overlap, as shown in Fig 10A. This model explained how antibodies to two different Rh(D) epitopes (in this case epD2 and epD3) could inhibit each other's binding to wild-type Rh(D) and how a change in the structure of Rh(D) in category VI RBCs (asterisk, Fig 10A) would cause the loss of epD2. However, based on this concept of Rh(D) epitopes as distinct domains, we would expect that antibodies against different epitopes of Rh(D) would be structurally and genetically distinct as well. Thus, it was surprising that our anti-Rh(D) clones demonstrated such marked restriction in gene usage. For example, only two superspecies of V<sub>H</sub> genes were used despite specificities for 4 of the original 6 Rh(D) epitopes described by Lomas et al.<sup>6</sup> Furthermore, multiple specificities could arise from a single heavy chain depending on the light chain with which it was paired (eg, E1 with M2, M3, L3, or L4). In addition, other clones repeatedly

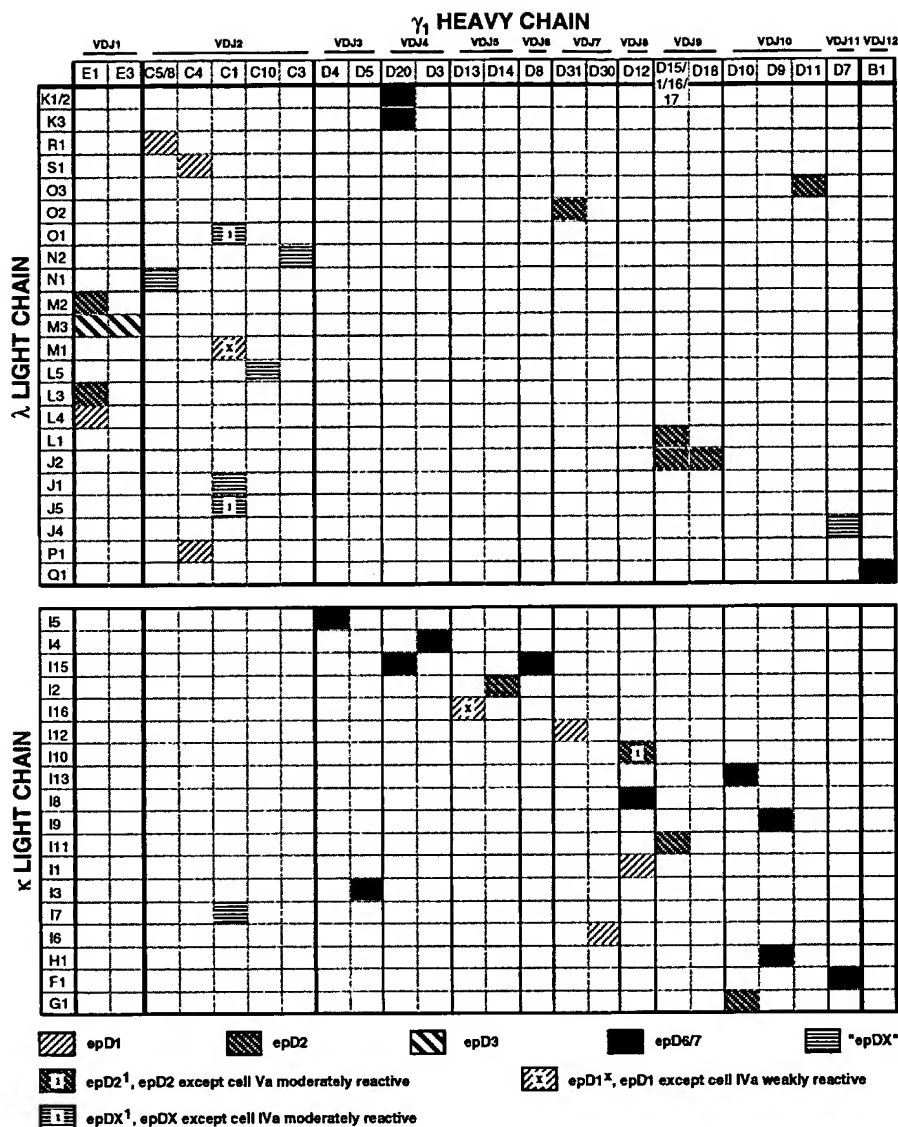


Fig 8. Matrix illustrating the genetic composition and epitope specificity of anti-Rh(D) antibodies. The horizontal axis represents the unique  $\gamma_1$  heavy chains and the vertical axis represents the unique  $\lambda$  and  $\kappa$  light chains (based on amino acid sequence). A shaded pattern at the intersection of a heavy chain/light chain pair indicates the Rh(D) epitope specificity observed for that Fab/phage antibody. A few clones gave mixed patterns of reactivity, as shown (see text). The order of heavy chains (left to right) and light chains (top to bottom) was determined by the multiple alignment of amino acid sequences as in Figs 2, 4, and 5. Note that heavy chains D1, D15, D16, and D17, although differing in nucleotide sequence, have the identical amino acid sequences and thus comprise a single column. Similarly, heavy chains C5 and C8 and  $\lambda$  light chains K1 and K2 encode the same proteins. The pairings of these 28 heavy and 41 light chain nucleotide gene segments, which produced 53 unique Fab transcripts, encoded 43 different Fab proteins, as indicated in the matrix.

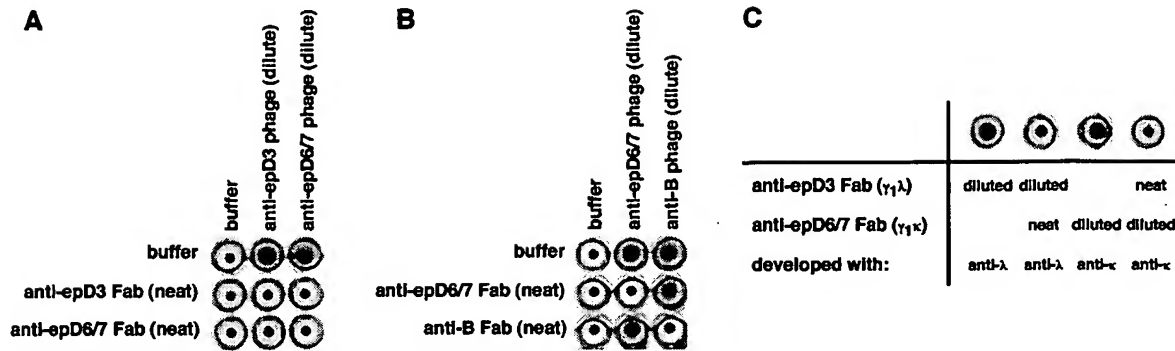
demonstrated variable weak reactivity against certain Rh(D) category RBCs that would affect the epitope specificities to which they were assigned (eg, C1 with O1, M1, or J5).

Several hypotheses could account for these findings. The most simplistic interpretation is that the heavy chain does not directly interact with the antigen, but rather is responsible for bringing the antibody in close proximity with the antigen. The specific interactions between the light chain and the antigen would then determine the epitope specificity for that antibody. In this regard, our data are consistent with the observations of Boucher et al<sup>10</sup> on the relative cationic nature of anti-Rh(D) heavy chains. However, because we found that light chains become cationic during somatic mutation, the charge of the entire antibody may play a role in its ability to bind, resulting in the selection and expansion of particular B-cell clones.

A more compelling hypothesis is that Rh(D) epitopes do not differ spatially but differ only in the number and arrangement of

contact residues presented (Fig 10B). In other words, the footprints of most, if not all, anti-Rh(D) antibodies are essentially identical to one another. The genetic events that produce partial Rh(D) molecules result in the loss of certain critical key points of contact necessary for some antibodies to bind; alternatively, they result in the formation of new structures that interfere with the binding of other anti-Rh(D) Igs. For example, the introduction of a ledge in Rh(D) category VI cells (asterisk, Fig 10B) does not interfere with the binding of an anti-epD3 antibody, but does prevent the binding of anti-epD2. Therefore, category VI RBCs are said to have epD3 but lack epD2.

This model is consistent with our inhibition experiments (Fig 9) and with those of Gorick et al<sup>37</sup> and offers an explanation for the marked restriction in heavy chain gene usage. It also reconciles a mechanism by which one heavy chain (eg, E1) can confer binding to multiple epitopes and why some of our recombinant anti-Rh(D) antibodies, as well as some convention-



**Fig 9.** Inhibition studies with recombinant anti-Rh(D) antibodies. Panels show results of representative experiments demonstrating the mutual inhibition of antibodies directed at 2 different Rh(D) epitopes (in this example, epD3 and epD6/7; A and C), but not between an Rh(D) antibody and an unrelated recombinant anti-RBC antibody (an anti-blood group B antibody; B). In (A), Rh(D)-positive RBCs were incubated with soluble Fabs only, phage-displayed Fabs only, or combinations of the two, as indicated. In (B), Rh(D)-positive RBCs that were blood group B were used. After washing, RBCs were resuspended in anti-M13 antibody and assessed for agglutination induced by phage-displayed Fabs. Soluble Fabs were used full-strength, whereas Fab/phage preparations were present in limiting amounts to increase the sensitivity of the inhibition assay (see the Materials and Methods). In (C), mutual inhibition of epD3 and epD6/7 anti-Rh(D) antibodies was demonstrated with Rh(D)-positive RBCs,  $\gamma_1\kappa$  and  $\gamma_1\lambda$  soluble Fabs, and light chain isotype-specific antisera (see text for details). In these examples, the anti-epD3 and anti-epD6/7 antibodies were clones E1/M3 and D5/I3, respectively. The anti-blood group B antibody was isolated from an IgG phage display library made from the splenic B cells of a blood group O donor.<sup>61</sup>

ally produced monoclonals,<sup>36</sup> display variable reactivity against certain categories of partial Rh(D) RBCs. From the antigen's perspective, this model explains how a single point mutation in Rh(D) can result in the loss of multiple Rh(D) epitopes (such as T283I in category HMi RBCs<sup>47</sup>) and how the residues associated with the expression of some epitopes appear to be distributed among nearly all the extracellular loops of Rh(D).<sup>48</sup> It also provides an understanding as to how  $\geq 37$  epitopes can fit on the relatively small extracellularly exposed surface of the Rh(D) molecule.<sup>3</sup>

This concept of coincident epitopes is best exemplified by comparing the E1/M2 and E1/M3 clones. The only difference between the reactivity of E1/M2 and E1/M3 is the ability of the latter antibody to agglutinate Rh(D) category VI cells (Fig 7). Hence, E1/M2 is classified as an anti-epD2 and E1/M3 as an anti-epD3 antibody. Light chains M2 and M3 differ by only 3 residues: D82A, G95aA, and W96V (Fig 5). Therefore, some combination of these residues confers reactivity against category VI cells. In other words, epD2 and epD3, as seen by the E1/M2 and E1/M3 antibodies, differ by the binding constraints

**Table 1. Comparison of Current IgG Fab/Phage Library-Derived Anti-Rh(D) MoAbs With Those Previously Produced by Conventional Tissue Culture Methods**

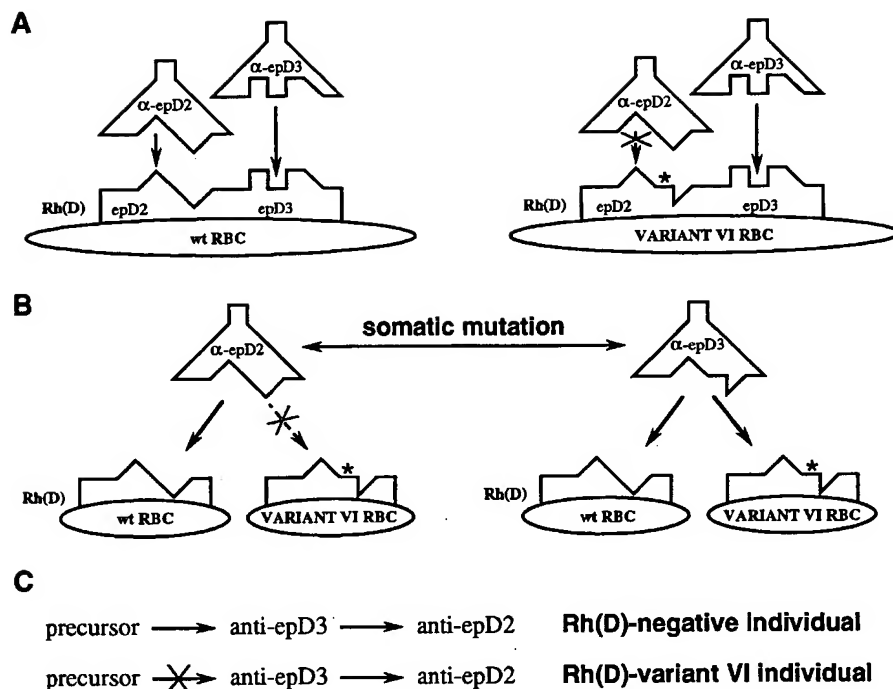
Attribute	Previously Published*	Current Study	
<b>Heavy Chains</b>		(by clone)†	(by VDJ)
VH3 family derived	12/21 (57%)	28/28 (100%)	12/12 (100%)
VH3-33 superspecies‡/VH3	10/12 (83%)	26/28 (93%)	11/12 (92%)
VH3-33/VH3	9/12 (75%)	19/28 (68%)	9/12 (75%)
VH3-21/VH3	1/12 (8%)	2/28 (7%)	1/12 (8%)
VH4-34 derived	2/21 (10%)	0/28 (0%)	0/12 (0%)
JH6 usage	15/21 (71%)	9/28 (32%)	5/12 (42%)
CDR3 length	16-20 (28§)	15-19	
<b><math>\kappa</math> Light Chains</b>			
V $\kappa$ 1 family derived/total $\kappa$	8/12 (67%)	17/18 (94%)	
J $\kappa$ 1 usage/total $\kappa$	4/12 (33%)	6/18 (33%)	
J $\kappa$ 2 usage/total $\kappa$	4/12 (33%)	6/18 (33%)	
<b><math>\lambda</math> Light Chains</b>			
V $\lambda$ 1 family derived/total $\lambda$	2/8 (25%)	12/23 (52%)	
V $\lambda$ 3 family derived/total $\lambda$	5/8 (63%)	5/23 (22%)	
DPL16 derived/V $\lambda$ 3 family	3/5 (60%)	4/5 (80%)	
J $\lambda$ 2Vasicek usage/total $\lambda$	6/8 (75%)	23/23 (100%)	

\*Compiled from a total of 21 sequences of IgG anti-Rh(D) antibodies isolated from multiple subjects originally published by Bye et al,<sup>25</sup> Hughes-Jones et al,<sup>23</sup> Chouchane et al,<sup>24</sup> and Boucher et al<sup>10</sup> and available from Genbank. One light chain (Oak-3)<sup>25</sup> was not available in Genbank and was not included in the assessment.

†For heavy chains, the left column tabulates each clone separately and the right column tabulates clones on the basis of shared V-D-J joining regions.

‡VH3-33 superspecies defined as the group of VH3 family germline genes comprising VH3-33, VH3-30, and VH30.3.

§CDR3 length outlier.



**Fig 10.** Conventional (A) and proposed (B) models for Rh(D) antigen/antibody binding. Note that the predicted combining sites and genetic relationships between antibodies differ between the two models. (C) If antibodies directed at different Rh(D) epitopes are clonally related, then the expressed repertoire will differ between Rh(D)-negative and partial Rh(D) individuals (see text for discussion).

imposed by at most three mutations. If the model depicted in Fig 10A were correct and the epitopes were independent, these mutations would have to cause enough structural alteration in the antibody combining site so that a completely separate epitope on the same antigen would be recognized. It would seem unlikely that these 3 mutations could cause such a change, especially given the lack of internal homology domains in Rh(D). Thus, we conclude that it is far more plausible that the footprints of these 2 antibodies are essentially identical and that one or more of these mutations (eg, the tryptophan in CDR3 of M2) prevent(s) the interaction of E1/M2 with category VI RBCs. Because other clones demonstrate that the light chain can confer specificity against epD1, epD2, or epD3 (with the E1 heavy chain); epD1 or epDX (with C5); and epD1, epD2, and epD6/7 (with D12), we suggest that all 5 of these epitopes have similar antibody combining sites.

#### *Immunologic and Clinical Implications of Proposed Model*

The model depicted in Fig 10B leads to additional predictions concerning the Rh(D) immune response beyond simply clarifying what is meant by an Rh(D) epitope. It is commonly stated in the transfusion medicine literature that individuals whose RBCs express partial Rh(D) antigens are free to make antibodies to the Rh(D) epitopes they lack.<sup>34</sup> Therefore, an individual who produces category VI RBCs should be able to make anti-epD2 but not anti-epD3. If these epitopes were truly independent, then the immune repertoire of the anti-epD2 antibodies made by a category VI individual would be similar to those produced by an Rh(D)-negative person. However, to the immune system, epD2 and epD3 are not independent. We postulate that the somatic mutation of an anti-epD3 antibody can change its fine specificity to that of epD2 (or vice versa, Fig 10C). Suppose that the preferred way of making an anti-epD2 antibody is to go

through an anti-epD3 intermediate. To an Rh(D)-negative individual, this process can take place unimpeded. However, in a category VI individual, this route would be unfavorable because an anti-epD3 antibody would be self-reactive. As a result, such an individual would have to make anti-epD2 antibodies by following alternative routes or by tolerating some degree of autoreactivity in the process. With respect to the latter point, it is of interest to note that a transient production of auto-anti-Rh(D) frequently precedes or accompanies the early production of allo-anti-Rh(D) in individuals who express partial Rh(D) antigens.<sup>49-54</sup> We would predict, therefore, that the anti-epD2 antibodies from a category VI individual would be different in composition (ie, gene usage) and quite possibly quantitatively depressed as compared with an Rh(D)-negative individual. This may be analogous to the antibodies of the ABO blood group system in which it has been observed that anti-A and anti-B titers in blood group O individuals are significantly higher than in blood group B or A individuals, respectively.<sup>55</sup> Blood group O individuals are unconstrained in creating their anti-A and anti-B immune repertoires, whereas individuals who produce A or B antigens (2 nearly identical structures) must do so in a manner that avoids self-reactivity.

In the case of antibodies E1/M2 and E1/M3, they appear to have arisen from a common precursor B cell rather than directly from each other (Fig 5). To test the framework of our hypothesis, ie, somatic mutation resulting in epitope migration of an antibody, we are constructing the precursors and potential intermediates between the M2 and M3 light chains and will then determine what Rh(D) epitope specificities (if any) they express. This concept of epitope migration has been previously reported for murine anti-cryptococcal<sup>56</sup> and anti-type II collagen<sup>57</sup> antibodies.

If the proposed model for Rh(D) epitopes is correct, then the

question of the number of epitopes may be obsolete. There may be as many epitopes as can be differentiated by the number of cell categories, ie,  $2^n$  epitopes, where  $n$  is the number of distinct partial Rh(D) RBCs. A more important question is the interrelationships between the various epitopes. For example, are some epitopes further away than others—not in the topological sense, but in terms of the number of mutational hits an antibody needs to receive to change its serologic reactivity. Furthermore, does the humoral immune response in a partial Rh(D) individual differ from that in an Rh(D)-negative individual in the manner predicted by this model? One may find that allo-anti-Rh(D) antibodies made by partial Rh(D) individuals are not as clinically significant, ie, capable of inducing hemolysis. This may explain why hemolytic disease of the newborn due to anti-Rh(D) produced by pregnant individuals with partial Rh(D) phenotypes is so rare even when taking into account the low prevalence of the partial Rh(D) phenotypes.<sup>34</sup> A better understanding of the immune response to Rh(D) in these patients may alleviate concerns regarding the need to identify such individuals to ensure that they only receive Rh(D)-negative blood products for transfusion and Rh(D)-immune globulin during pregnancy.<sup>58</sup> Furthermore, with respect to the design of recombinant Rh(D)-immune globulin for use in Rh(D)-negative patients, it may not be necessary to formulate cocktails of MoAbs containing multiple Rh(D) epitope specificities.

In summary, we have studied the genetic and immunological properties of a large array of anti-Rh(D) antibodies to elucidate this clinically significant human immune response on a molecular level. Our results show that anti-Rh(D) antibodies display a high degree of structural relatedness and the ability to inhibit each other's binding despite differences in epitope specificity. These findings suggest that Rh(D) epitopes are not spatially distinct and that Rh(D) antibodies may undergo epitope migration as a result of somatic mutation. The end result is that the prevalence of certain anti-Rh(D) specificities in the immune repertoire may be a function not only of what epitopes an individual lacks, but of the number of accessible pathways that the individual's immune system can use that avoid self-reactivity. This process may be a general feature of human immune responses to other clinically significant, closely related epitopes.

#### ACKNOWLEDGMENT

The authors thank Shari Russell and Vatee Bunya for their excellent technical assistance and Christine Lomas-Francis, Marion Reid, Marilyn Moulds, and Peggy Spruell for providing samples of Rh(D) variant RBCs.

#### APPENDIX

Genbank accession numbers for anti-Rh(D) heavy chains are as follows: B01, AF044419; C01, AF044420; C03, AF044421; C04, AF044422; C05, AF044423; C08, AF044424; C10, AF044425; D01, AF044426; D03, AF044427; D04, AF044428; D05, AF044429; D07, AF044430; D08, AF044431; D09, AF044432; D10, AF044433; D11, AF044434; D12, AF044435; D13, AF044436; D14, AF044437; D15, AF044438; D16, AF044439; D17, AF044440; D18, AF044441; D20, AF044442; D30, AF044443; D31, AF044444; E01, AF044445; E03, AF044446. Genbank accession numbers for antiRh(D)  $\kappa$  light chains are as follows: F01, AF044447; G01, AF044448; H01, AF044449; I01, AF044450; I02, AF044451; I03, AF044452; I04, AF044453; I05, AF044454; I06, AF044455; I07, AF044456; I08, AF044457; I09,

AF044458; I10, AF044459; I11, AF044460; I12, AF044461; I13, AF044462; I15, AF044463; I16, AF044464. Genbank accession numbers for anti-Rh(D)  $\lambda$  light chains are as follows: J01, AF044465; J02, AF044466; J04, AF044467; J06, AF044468; K01, AF044469; K02, AF044470; K03, AF044471; L01, AF044472; L03, AF044473; L04, AF044474; L05, AF044475; M01, AF044476; M02, AF044477; M03, AF044478; N01, AF044479; N02, AF044480; O01, AF044481; O02, AF044482; O03, AF044483; P01, AF044484; Q01, AF044485; R01, AF044486; S01, AF044487.

#### REFERENCES

1. Bowman JM: Hemolytic disease of the newborn, in Garratty G (ed): *Immunobiology of Transfusion Medicine*. New York, NY, Dekker, 1994, p 553
2. Shirey R, Ness P: Alloimmunization to blood group antigens, in Anderson KC, Ness PM (eds): *Scientific Basis of Transfusion Medicine: Implications for Clinical Practice*. Philadelphia, PA, Saunders, 1994, p 507
3. Scott M: Rh serology—Coordinator's report. *Transfus Clin Biol* 3:333, 1996
4. Moore S, Woodrow CF, McClelland DB: Isolation of membrane components associated with human red cell antigens Rh(D), (c), (E) and Fy<sup>a</sup>. *Nature* 295:529, 1982
5. Gahmberg CG: Molecular characterization of the human red cell Rh<sub>D</sub>(D) antigen. *EMBO J* 2:223, 1983
6. Lomas C, Tippet P, Thompson KM, Melamed MD, Hughes-Jones NC: Demonstration of seven epitopes on the Rh antigen D using human monoclonal anti-D antibodies and red cells from D categories. *Vox Sang* 57:261, 1989
7. Bloy C, Hermand P, Blanchard D, Cherif-Zahar B, Goossens D, Cartron J-P: Surface orientation and antigenic properties of Rh and LW polypeptides of the human erythrocyte membrane. *J Biol Chem* 265:21482, 1990
8. Le van Kim C, Mouro I, Cherif-Zahar B, Raynal V, Cherrier C, Cartron JP, Colin Y: Molecular cloning and primary structure of the human blood group RhD polypeptide. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 89:10925, 1992
9. Arce MA, Thompson ES, Wagner S, Coyne KE, Ferdman BA, Lublin DM: Molecular cloning of RhD cDNA derived from a gene present in RhD-positive, but not RhD-negative individuals. *Blood* 82:651, 1993
10. Boucher G, Broly H, Lemieux R: Restricted use of cationic germline V<sub>H</sub> gene segments in human Rh(D) red cell antibodies. *Blood* 89:3277, 1997
11. Stein LD, Sigal NH: Limiting dilution analysis of Epstein Barr virus-induced immunoglobulin production. *Cell Immunol* 79:309, 1983
12. Brown NA, Miller G: Immunoglobulin expression by human B lymphocytes clonally transformed by EBV. *J Immunol* 128:24, 1982
13. Roder JC, Cole SPC, Kozbor D: The EBV-hybridoma technique. *Methods Enzymol* 121:140, 1986
14. Goossens D, Champomier F, Rouger P, Salmon C: Human monoclonal antibodies against blood group antigens. *J Immunol Methods* 101:193, 1987
15. Casali P, Burastero SE, Nakamura M, Inghirami G, Notkins AL: Human lymphocytes making rheumatoid factor and antibodies to ssDNA belong to Leu-1 positive B-cell subset. *Science* 236:77, 1987
16. Croce CM, Shander M, Martinis J: Chromosomal location of the gene for human immunoglobulin heavy chains. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 76:3416, 1979
17. Croce CM, Shander M, Martinis J: Preferential retention of human chromosome 14 in mouse x human B cell hybrids. *Eur J Immunol* 10:486, 1980
18. Burton DR, Barbas CF: Human antibodies from combinatorial libraries. *Adv Immunol* 57:191, 1994
19. Winter G, Griffiths AD, Hawkins RE, Hoogenboom HR: Making



- antibodies by phage display technology. *Annu Rev Immunol* 12:433, 1994
20. Siegel DL: New approaches to monoclonal antibody production, in Garratty G (ed): *Applications of Molecular Biology to Blood Transfusion Medicine*. Bethesda, MD, AABB, 1997, p 73
  21. Siegel DL, Silberstein LE: Expression and characterization of recombinant anti-Rh(D) antibodies on filamentous phage: A model system for isolating human red blood cell antibodies by repertoire cloning. *Blood* 83:2334, 1994
  22. Siegel DL, Chang TY, Russell SL, Bunya VY: Isolation of cell surface-specific human monoclonal antibodies using phage display and magnetically-activated cell sorting: Applications in immunohematology. *J Immunol Methods* 206:73, 1997
  23. Hughes-Jones NC, Bye JM, Beale D, Coadwell J: Nucleotide sequences and three-dimensional modeling of the V<sub>H</sub> and V<sub>L</sub> domains of two human monoclonal antibodies specific for the D antigen of the human Rh-blood-group-system. *Biochem J* 268:135, 1990
  24. Chouchane L, Van Spronsen A, Breyer J, Guglielmi P, Strosberg AD: Molecular characterization of a human anti-Rh(D) antibody with a DH segment encoded by a germ-line sequence. *Eur J Biochem* 207:1115, 1992
  25. Bye JM, Carter C, Cui Y, Gorick BD, Songsivilai S, Winter G, Hughes-Jones NC, Marks JD: Germline variable region gene segment derivation of human monoclonal anti-Rh(D) antibodies. *J Clin Invest* 90:2481, 1992
  26. Barbas CF, Lerner RA: Combinatorial immunoglobulin libraries on the surface of phage (Phabs): Rapid selection of antigen-specific Fabs. *Methods: A Companion to Methods Enzymol* 2:119, 1991
  27. Roben PW, Salem AN, Silverman GJ: VH3 family antibodies bind domain D of staphylococcal protein A. *J Immunol* 154:6437, 1995
  28. Althaus H-H, Müller W: DNAPLOT. [http://www.mrc\\_cpe.cam.ac.uk/imt\\_doc/DNAsearch.html](http://www.mrc_cpe.cam.ac.uk/imt_doc/DNAsearch.html) (internet), 1996
  29. Tomlinson IM, Williams SC, Corbett SJ, Cox JPL, Winter G: V Base Directory of Human V Gene Sequences. [http://www.mrc\\_cpe.cam.ac.uk/imt\\_doc/vbase\\_home\\_page.html](http://www.mrc_cpe.cam.ac.uk/imt_doc/vbase_home_page.html) (internet), 1996
  30. Siegel D, Russell S, Chang T: A plethora of human monoclonal anti-Rh antibodies isolated using phage display and magnetically-activated cell sorting. *Transfusion* 36:375, 1996
  31. Chothia C, Lesk AM, Gherardi E, Tomlinson IM, Walter G, Marks JD, Llewelyn MB, Winter G: Structural repertoire of the human VH segments. *J Mol Biol* 227:799, 1992
  32. Dörner T, Brezinschek H-P, Brezinschek R, Foster S, Domiati-Saad R, Lipsky P: Analysis of the frequency and pattern of somatic mutations within nonproductively rearranged human variable heavy chain genes. *J Immunol* 158:2779, 1997
  33. Stollar BD: The expressed heavy chain V gene repertoire of circulating B cells in normal adults. *Ann NY Acad Sci* 764:547, 1995
  34. Mollison PL, Engelfreit CP, Contreras M: *Blood Transfusion in Clinical Medicine* (ed 9). Oxford, UK, Blackwell Scientific, 1993
  35. Tippet P, Moore A: Monoclonal antibodies against Rh and Rh related antigens. *J Immunogenet* 17:309, 1990
  36. Tippet P, Lomas-Francis C, Wallace M: The Rh antigen D: Partial D antigens and associated low incidence antigens. *Vox Sang* 70:123, 1996
  37. Gorick BD, Thompson KM, Melamad MD, Hughes-Jones NC: Three epitopes on the human Rh antigen D recognized by <sup>125</sup>I-labeled human monoclonal IgG antibodies. *Vox Sang* 55:165, 1988
  38. Abelson N, Rawson A: Studies of blood group antibodies. II. Fractionation of Rh antibodies by anion-cation cellulose exchange chromatography. *J Immunol* 83:49, 1959
  39. Frame M, Mollison P: Charge differences between human IgG isoantibodies associated with specificity. *Immunology* 16:277, 1969
  40. Silberstein LE, Jefferies LC, Goldman J, Friedman DF, Moore JS, Nowell PC, Roelcke D, Pruzanski W, Roudier J, Silverman GJ: Variable region gene analysis of pathologic human autoantibodies to the related i and I red blood cell antigens. *Blood* 78:2372, 1991
  41. Pascual V, Victor K, Leisz D, Spellerberg MB, Hamblin TJ, Thompson KM, Ramden I, Natvig J, Capra JD, Stevenson FK: Nucleotide sequence analysis of the V regions of two IgM cold agglutinins: Evidence that the VH4-21 gene segment is responsible for the major cross-reactive idiotype. *J Immunol* 146:4385, 1991
  42. Silverman G, Goni F, Fernandez J: Distinct patterns of heavy chain variable region subgroup use by human monoclonal autoantibodies of different specificity. *J Exp Med* 168:2361, 1988
  43. Thompson KM, Sutherland J, Barden G, Melamed MD, Randen I, Natvig JB, Pascual V, Capra JD, Stevenson FK: Human monoclonal antibodies against blood group antigens preferentially express a V<sub>H</sub>4-21 variable region gene-associated epitope. *Scand J Immunol* 34:509, 1991
  44. Stevenson FK, Smith GJ, North J, Hamblin TJ, Glennie MJ: Identification of normal B-cell counterparts of neoplastic cells which secrete cold agglutinins of anti-I and anti-i specificity. *Br J Haematol* 72:9, 1989
  45. Argall C, Ball J, Trentleman E: Presence of anti-D antibody in the serum of a D<sup>a</sup> patient. *J Lab Clin Med* 41:895, 1953
  46. Cartron J, Rouillac C, Le Van Kim C, Mouro I, Colin Y: Tentative model for the mapping of D epitopes on the RhD polypeptide. *Transfus Clin Biol* 3:497, 1996
  47. Liu W, Jones J, Scott M, Voak D, Avent N: Molecular analysis of two D-variants, DHMi and DHMii. *Trans Med* 6:21, 1996 (suppl 2, abstr)
  48. Scott M, Voak D, Jones J, Avent N, Liu W, Hughes-Jones N, Sonneborn H: A structural model for 30 Rh D epitopes based on serological and DNA sequence data from partial D phenotypes. *Transfus Clin Biol* 3:391, 1996
  49. Chown B, Kaita H, Lewis M, Roy B, Wyatt L: A "D-positive" man who produced anti-D. *Vox Sang* 8:420, 1963
  50. Macpherson C, Stevenson T, Gayton J: Anti-D in a D-positive man, with positive direct Coombs test and normal red cell survival. *Am J Clin Pathol* 45:748, 1966
  51. Beard M, Pemberton J, Blagdon J, Jenkins W: Rh immunization following incompatible blood transfusion and a possible long-term complication of anti-D immunoglobulin therapy. *Med Genet* 8:317, 1971
  52. Cook I: Primary rhesus immunization of male volunteers. *Br J Haematol* 20:369, 1971
  53. Holland P, Gralnick M: A new category? Auto-anti-D with complete D antigen [sic] but no overt hemolysis. *Transfusion* 13:363, 1973 (abstr)
  54. Issitt PD: *Applied Blood Group Serology* (ed 3). Miami, FL, Montgomery Scientific, 1985
  55. Ichikawa Y: A study of the iso-agglutinin titers in the sera of Australian subjects (white). *Jpn J Med Sci Biol* 12:1, 1959
  56. Mukherjee J, Nussbaum G, Scharff MD, Casadevall A: Protective and nonprotective monoclonal antibodies to *Cryptococcus neoformans* originating from one B cell. *J Exp Med* 181:405, 1995
  57. Mo JA, Holmdahl R: The B cell response to autologous type II collagen. *J Immunol* 157:2440, 1996
  58. Jones J, Scott ML, Voak D: Monoclonal anti-D specificity and Rh D structure: Criteria for selection of monoclonal anti-D reagents for routine typing of patients and donors. *Trans Med* 5:171, 1995
  59. Kabat EA, Wu TT, Perry HM, Gottesman KS, Foeller C: *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest* (ed 5). US Department of Health and Human Services, NIH Publication number 91-3242, Bethesda, MD, 1991
  60. Tomlinson IM, Walter G, Marks JD, Llewelyn MB, Winter G: The repertoire of human germline VH sequences reveals about fifty groups of VH segments with different hypervariable loops. *J Mol Biol* 227:776, 1992
  61. Chang T, Siegel D: Isolation of a highly mutated human anti-B antibody from a phage-display library. *Transfusion* 37:89S, 1997 (abstr)



**This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning  
Operations and is not part of the Official Record**

**BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES**

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

- ☒ **BLACK BORDERS**
- ☐ **IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES**
- ☐ **FADED TEXT OR DRAWING**
- ☐ **BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING**
- ☐ **SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES**
- ☐ **COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS**
- ☐ **GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS**
- ☒ **LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT**
- ☐ **REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY**
- ☐ **OTHER: \_\_\_\_\_**

**IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.**

**As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox.**